اللغة الإنجليزية
الصف الرابع الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

أشهر وأحب كتب تعليمية، وأوسعها انتشارًا

سلاح التلميذ

منذ عام ١٩٦٠

Connect

Parents' Guide

Primary (4)

FIRST TERM

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

إعداد/ نخبة من كبار الأساتذة المتخصصين

Name : ....

Class : ....

School: ....

سلاح التلميذ

العربية الحديثة للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

Contents

Theme 1: I discover myself

Theme 2: Myself and others

How to use the book
كيفية استخدام الكتاب

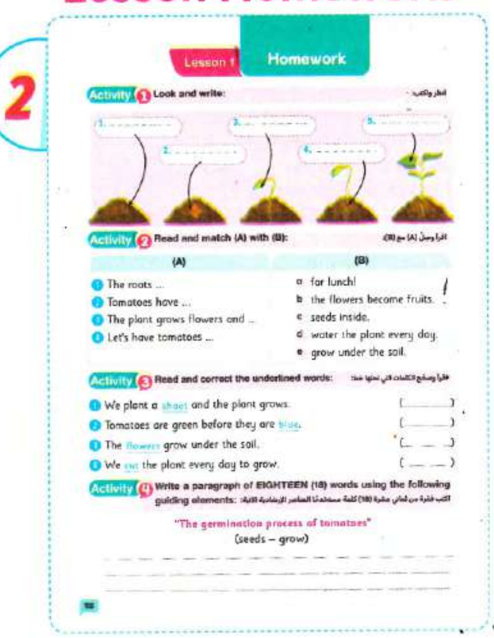
Student's Book Activities

1

أنشطة مجمعة من الكتاب المدرسي على كل وحدة.

Lesson Homework

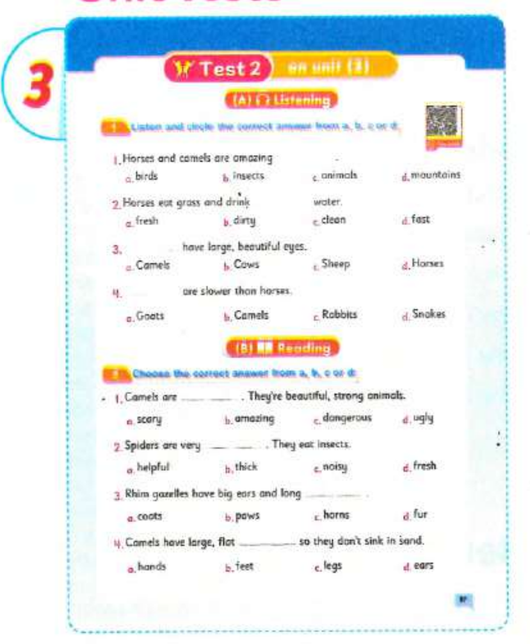
2



صفحة واجب لكل درس لمزيد من التدريب.

Unit Tests

3



امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات /امتحان خاصّ بسلاح التلميذ على كل وحدة للمزيد من التدريب.

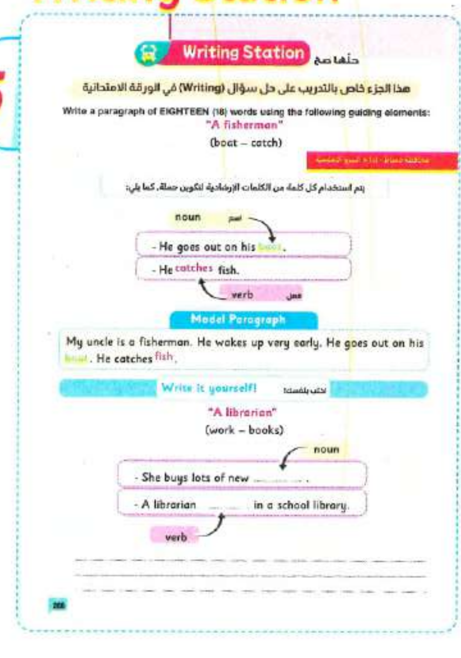
Dictation

4

تساعد التلاميذ على تحسين الإملاء وتعرُّف الكلمات.

Writing Station

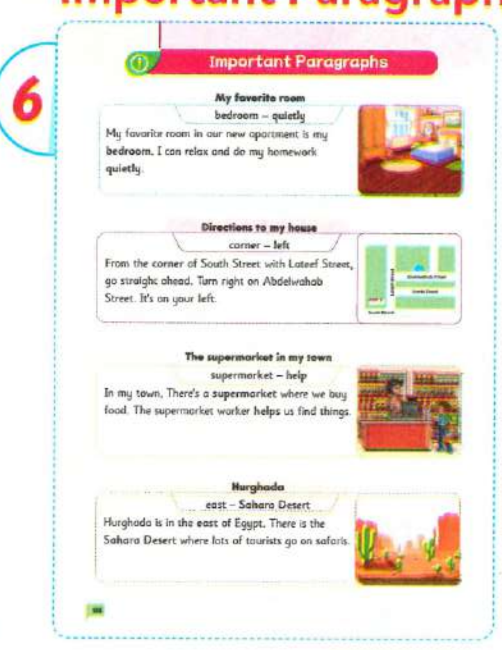
5



حلّها صح: جزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال الـ(writing) في الورقة الامتحانية.

Important Paragraphs

6



عرض لأهم الفقرات الواردة في كل وحدة.

Book Icons

You will learn	تحديد الهدف من كل درس.
Tryout	أنشطة تمهيدية للتدريب على الدرس.
QR code	حمِّل تطبيق الـ QR، واستخدمه في قراءة صور الـ QR الموجودة بالكتاب والخاصَّة بالمقاطع الصوتية ومقاطع الفيديو والألعاب.
Tip!	ملاحظات تمت الاستعانة بها من كتاب الوزارة ليتعلَّم منها التلميذ.
Note	ملاحظات إضافية من كتاب سلاح التلميذ متعلِّقة بالدرس.
Language Focus	اللغة الأساسية التي يجب على التلميذ دراستها.

المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائي 2025 / 2024

(A) Listening — 6 Marks

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A text about **FORTY (40)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each.

One mark and a half each

(B) Reading — 14 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **4 Marks**

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

One mark each

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **4 Marks**

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

One mark each

4 Read the text and answer the questions: **6 Marks**

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70) to EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

(A) **TWO (2) MCQ** questions with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

One mark each

(B) **TWO (2) open ended** questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

Two marks each

(C) Writing — 10 Marks

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4 Marks

FOUR (4) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

One mark each

6 Punctuate the following: **1 Mark**

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided **(Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma)**. Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

Half a mark each

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5 Marks

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file... etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)

قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية
المواصفة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائي 2025 / 2024

(A) Listening $4\frac{1}{2}$ Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

Students are asked to listen to a text of about three or four sentences. Three multiple-choice items are given. Students are asked to choose the correct answer.

One mark and a half each

(B) Language Functions 8 Marks

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

Four words are given. Students are asked to complete the dialogue with these words.

Two marks each

(C) Reading Comprehension $7\frac{1}{2}$ Marks

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

A text is given. Students are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Two open-ended questions and three multiple-choice questions). One mark and a half each

(D) Vocabulary and Structures 10 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer: 5 Marks

Five multiple-choice items (three for vocabulary and two for grammar) are given. Students are asked to choose the correct answer. One mark each

5 Reorder: 5 Marks

Students are asked to reorder five groups of words to make five correct sentences.

One mark each

Let's remember

مراجعة على ما تمّت دراسته

3

Vocabulary Revision

Bazaar items

a bazaar	بازار	jewelry	مجوهرات	a bracelet	إسورة
earrings	حلق	a necklace	عقد	a ring	خاتم

Countries

Egypt	مصر	America	أمريكا	China	الصين	France	فرنسا

Nationalities

Egyptian	مصري	American	أمريكي	Chinese	صيني	French	فرنسي

Seasons

winter	الشتاء	spring	الربيع	summer	الصيف	fall	الْخريف

Months of the year

January	يناير	February	فبراير	March	مارس
April	أبريل	May	مايو	June	يونيو
July	يوليو	August	أغسطس	September	سبتمبر
October	أكتوبر	November	نوفمبر	December	ديسمبر

The weather

hot	حار	rainy	ممطر	cold	بارد	sunny	مشمس

Digital technology

screen	شاشة	internet	إنترنت	cell phone	هاتف خلوي
computer	كمبيوتر/حاسوب	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	website	موقع إلكتروني
tablet	تابلت/جهاز لوحي	mouse	الفأرة	information	معلومات

Meals and food

breakfast	الإفطار	snack	وجبة خفيفة	soup	شوربة
lunch	الغداء	chicken	دجاج	rice	أرز
dinner	العشاء	vegetables	خضراوات	potatoes	بطاطس

Phonics Revision

The "ss", "ff", and "ll" sounds

ss /s/	ff /f/	ll /l/
glass	coffee	dollar
dress	muffin	bell
	off	

The "str" and "spr" sounds

str /str/	spr /spr/
street	spring
strawberry	spray
straight	

The "pr" and "br" sounds

pr /pr/	br /br/
present	bracelet
price	brush
printer	branch
princess	broom
	bread

The "gg", "nn", and "tt" sounds

gg /g/	nn /n/	tt /t/
foggy	dinner	butter
egg	sunny	kitten

Language Revision

Verb to be (present form)

فعل «يكون» في زمن المضارع

I	am	He / She / It / Singular noun (اسم مفرد)	is
		You / We / They / Plural noun (اسم جمع)	are

am = 'm   is = 's   are = 're

Ex: – I am 12 years old.
– He's my father.
– The children are interested in reading.

Asking and answering about nationality

السؤال والإجابة عن الجنسية

Question السؤال		Answer الإجابة
Where are you from?	→	I'm from + country (بلد).
		I'm + nationality (جنسية).

Ex: – A: Where are you from?
B: I'm from Egypt. I'm Egyptian.

Talking about ability

التحدُّث عن القدرة

I can + verb (infinitive) (مصدر الفعل) ...

Ex: – I can download music.

Talking about the weather ...

التحدُّث عن الطقس ...

in the past في الماضي

It was + adjective (صفة) +yesterday.

Ex: – It was cold yesterday.

in the future في المستقبل

Tomorrow, it will be + adjective.

Ex: – Tomorrow, it will be rainy.

in the present في المضارع

It is + adjective + today.

Ex: – It is hot today.

Offering food

عرض الطعام

Question السؤال		Answer الإجابة
What would you like?	→	I'd like + food (طعام), please.
Ex: – A: What would you like?		B: I'd like chicken, please.
Would you like some + food?	→	Yes/No, thank you.
Ex: – A: Would you like some rice?		B: No, thank you.

Past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject (فاعل) + the 2nd form of the verb (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

Question السؤال

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + did + subject + verb (infinitive) ...?

Ex: – He traveled to Paris yesterday.
– She bought jewelry last week.

Ex: – A: What did you do last weekend?
B: I baked a cake last weekend.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

إضافة (-ed) لمعظم الأفعال.	إضافة (-d) للأفعال المنتهية بـ (e).	إضافة (-ied) للأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن.
Ex: watch → watched	**Ex:** like → liked	**Ex:** study → studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال ليست لها نهايات محددة.
Ex: buy → bought

Punctuation Revision

Period النقطة (.)

- We add a **period** at the end of each sentence. نضع النقطة في نهاية كل جملة.

Ex: – I'm from China. - I can watch videos.

Question mark علامة الاستفهام (?)

- When we write questions, we use a **question mark**. عندما نكتب أسئلة، نستخدم علامة الاستفهام.

Ex: – Would you like some rice? - When is your birthday?

Comma الفاصلة (,)

- When we write a list, we use a **comma**. عندما نكتب قائمة أشياء، نستخدم الفاصلة.

Ex: – You will find many markets for jewelry, fabric, perfume, and spice.

Exclamation point علامة التعجب (!)

- We use an **exclamation point** to show a strong feeling. نستخدم علامة التعجب لإظهار شعور قوي.

Ex: – It was delicious!

Capital letters الحروف الكبيرة

- We use capital letters as follows: نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة كما يلي:

– My name is Marie. بداية الجملة.

– This is Waleed and that is Mark. أسماء الأشخاص.

– She can speak Chinese. أسماء اللغات المختلفة.

– I went to Khan Al-Khalili. أسماء البلاد، والمدن، والأماكن المشهورة.

– Sara is French, but Youssef is Egyptian. الجنسيات.

– We have no school on Fridays. أيام الأسبوع.

– My birthday is on March 11th. شهور السنة.

– Mona and I can download photos. ضمير المتكلم (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

Let's remember — Activities

Activity 1 Say and circle the word with the odd sound out:
قُل وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المتخلف:

1. coffee – bell – muffin – off
2. spring – street – strawberry – straight
3. price – present – printer – bell
4. broom – bread – egg – branch

Activity 2 Read and choose the correct word:
اقرأ واختر الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Tom is American. He is from ....
   (France – America – Egypt)
2. I bought a/an .... from the bazaar yesterday.
   (ring – orange – website)
3. I can talk to my grandpa on the ....
   (keyboard – mouse – tablet)
4. I'd like some chicken for .... , please.
   (lunch – breakfast – snack)
5. It's .... in winter.
   (hot – rainy – sunny)

Activity 3 Read and correct the underlined words:
اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. I <u>go</u> to the park last week. (....................)
2. <u>Are</u> you like some chicken? - Yes, please. (....................)
3. They <u>am</u> from Egypt. (....................)
4. Tomorrow, it <u>was</u> rainy. (....................)
5. I can <u>ordered</u> things. (....................)

Activity 4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what did you do last weekend

....

Theme 1 I discover myself

1 Unit

I feel good

Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
- practice making sentences with *and* or *but*.
- read and listen to a Chinese folk tale.
- distinguish long and short vowels.
- talk about a place in Egypt.
- research and make a presentation.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الأطعمة وكيف أحافظ على صحّتي.
- أتدرب على تكوين جُمل مستخدمًا *and* أو *but*.
- اقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة شعبية صينية.
- أميّز بين الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.
- أتحدّث عن مكان في مصر.
- أبحث وأقدّم عرضًا تقديميًا.

Did you know?

- In Japan, you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid.

هل كنت تعلم؟

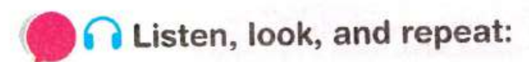
- في اليابان تستطيع شراء بطيخة على شكل هرم.

Lesson 1 Foods and drinks

You will learn

vocabulary about foods and drinks.

ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلّق بالأطعمة والمشروبات.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية

rice أرز

milk حليب

chicken دجاج

mangoes مانجو

watermelon بطيخ

grapes عنب

onions بصل

potatoes بطاطس

bananas موز

sugarcane قصب السكر

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

lunch	الغداء	food	طعام	Egypt	مصر
many	كثير	tomatoes	طماطم	table	طاولة/مائدة
country	بلد	things	أشياء	farmers	مزارعون

Adjectives الصفات

special	خاص/مميَّز	delicious	لذيذ	ready	جاهز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
look	يبدو	looked
produce	ينتج	produced
raise	يُربّي	raised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
make	يَعدُّ/يصنع	made
think	يفكِّر/يعتقد	thought
see	يرى	saw
grow	يزرع	grew

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Let's eat!	هيًّا نأكل!	come from ...	يأتي من ...
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟	Yum!	لذيذ!
That's right.	هذا صحيح.	on this table	على هذه المائدة

(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Mom made a special and delicious lunch for herself and Maged.
  أعدّت الأُمُّ غداءً مميزًا ولذيذًا لها ولماجد.
- They talk about food that comes from Egypt. تحدثا عن الطعام الذي يأتي من مصر
- We grow rice in Egypt. نحن نزرع الأرز في مصر.
- We also grow tomatoes and onions. نحن نزرع أيضًا الطماطم والبصل.
- We raise chickens in Egypt. نحن نربّي الدجاج في مصر.
- Egyptian farmers produce many things for us to eat.
  المزارعون المصريون ينتجون أشياء كثيرة لنا لنأكلها.

Conversation

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Mom

① Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.
الغداء جاهز. لقد أعددت بعض الطعام المميز لنا.

Maged

② Mom, it looks delicious! أمي، إنه يبدو لذيذًا!

③ Which food comes from our country, do you think?
أيُّ طعام يأتي من بلدنا، في اعتقادك؟

④ I think we grow rice in Egypt. أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.

⑤ Yes, that's right. What else? نعم، هذا صحيح. ماذا أيضًا؟

⑥ Hmmm, I think we **raise** chickens in Egypt.
هممم، أعتقد أننا نربّي الدجاج في مصر.

⑦ Yes, and tomatoes and **onions**. Egyptian farmers **produce** many things you see on this table. Let's eat!
نعم، والطماطم والبصل. يُنتج المزارعون المصريون العديد من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه المائدة. هيَّا نأكل!

⑧ Yum! لذيذ!

Conversation Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

Play Audio

1. Mom made a special .... for us yesterday.
   a. breakfast b. lunch c. dinner d. snack
2. Our lunch was ....
   a. delicious b. bad c. good d. fast
3. In Egypt, we grow .... and raise chickens.
   a. potatoes b. sugarcane c. bananas d. rice
4. Egyptian farmers .... many fruits and vegetables.
   a. buy b. look c. raise d. produce

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

chickens – onions – right – farmers – doctors

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.
Mom : Yes, that's (1) .... What else?
Maged : Hmmm, I think we also raise (2) .... in Egypt.
Mom : Yes, Egyptian (3) .... produce many things you see on this table, like tomatoes and (4) .... Let's eat!

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. food – comes – country? – our – from – Which
   ....
2. some – for – I – food – made – us. – special
   ....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- i think we grow rice in Egypt
  ....

Lesson 1 Activities

Activity 1 Look and fill in the missing letters: انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. c — ick — n
2. su — ar — ane
3. po — at — es
4. o — i — ns

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A : What do Egyptian farmers grow?
   B : They grow things like .... and onions.
   a. chickens b. cows c. tomatoes d. tables
2. In Egypt, farmers .... animals like chickens.
   a. make b. raise c. grow d. plant
3. Mangoes and .... are fruits. I like to eat them.
   a. grapes b. milk c. rice d. onions
4. Egyptian farmers .... many things that we eat.
   a. make b. teach c. think d. produce

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

grow – chickens – rice – bananas – farmers

We learned a lot about Egyptian food at school yesterday. Egyptian (1)........................ produce many things for us to eat. In Egypt, we (2)........................ vegetables like carrots and onions, and fruits like (3)........................ and mangoes. We also raise (4)........................ in Egypt. Egyptian food is really delicious.

Lesson 1 Homework

Activity 1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

Activity 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)	(B)
1. Potatoes and onions ...	☐ a. are fruits.
2. Egyptian farmers raise ...	☐ b. rice in Egypt.
3. Bananas and grapes ...	☐ c. our country?
4. We grow ...	☐ d. chickens.
	☐ e. are vegetables.

Activity 3 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. Maged, which food <u>goes</u> from our country? (........................)
2. We <u>grow</u> chickens in Egypt. (........................)
3. Egyptian <u>doctors</u> grow and produce many things. (........................)
4. We <u>raise</u> vegetables like tomatoes and onions. (........................)

Activity 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"Foods we produce in Egypt"
(rice – grow)

....
....
....

Lesson 2 I am healthy

You will learn about healthy lifestyles.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: عن أساليب الحياة الصحيَّة.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

desert	صحراء	cola	كولا	scientist	عالِم
plants	نباتات	park	حديقة	salads	سلطات
family	عائلة	candy	حلوى	shops	محلات
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	banana milkshake	حليب مخفوق بالموز	sometimes	أحيانًا

Adjectives الصفات

awesome	رائع	healthy	صحِّي/بصحة جيدة	yummy	لذيذ
different	مختلف	interesting	شيِّق	busy	مشغول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
play	يلعب	played	drink	يشرب	drank
practice	يتدرب	practiced	eat	يأكل	ate
walk	يمشي	walked	make	يصنع	made
talk	يتحدث	talked	go	يذهب	went

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	three times ...	ثلاث مرات ...
go walking ...	يذهب للتمشية ...	look at ...	ينظر إلى ...
in a wheelchair basketball team	في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة	do a lot of sports ...	يمارس الكثير من الأنشطة الرياضية ...

Listen, look, and read: استمع، انظر واقرأ:

Interviewer: Do you think you're healthy, Judy?
هل تعتقدين أنكِ بصحة جيدة يا جودي؟

Judy: Yes, I do. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

نعم، أنا كذلك. فأنا أمارس الكثير من الأنشطة الرياضية في المدرسة. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أمشي إلى منزل جدتي مع عائلتي. أنا حقًّا أحب المشي لأنني أستطيع التحدُّث إلى أمي وأبي. يمكننا أن نرى المنازل والمحلات المختلفة. أنا لا آكل الحلوى، لكنني أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتي المفضَّلة هي الموز والبطيخ. تقوم أمي بإعداد حليب مخفوق بالموز رائع!

Interviewer: Do you think you're healthy, Adam?
هل تعتقد أنكَ بصحة جيدة يا آدم؟

Adam: Yes, I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park!

نعم، فأنا في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة في المدرسة. نحن نتدرَّب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب الكولا، لكنني أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. أنا لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جدًّا. أنا ألعب كرة السلة في الحديقة!

Interviewer: Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

هل تعتقدين أنكِ بصحة جيدة يا دارين؟

Dareen: Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes! I only drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

نعم، أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة. أنا وأمي نذهب للتمشية في الصحراء مع والدي. فوالدي عالِم ويحب النظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات. نحن نذهب معه في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. هذا شيِّق جدًّا، لكنَّ الجوَّ يكون شديد الحرارة أحيانًا! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأنني لا أحب الكولا. أنا أحب البرجر، لكنني آكل واحدًا فقط في الأسبوع. أمي تصنع سلطات لذيذة.

Lesson 2 Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

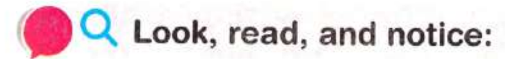
1. Judy doesn't eat ...., but she likes fruit.
   a. banana b. watermelon c. candy d. rice
2. Adam plays in a wheelchair .... team at school.
   a. basketball b. tennis c. football d. handball
3. Adam drinks ...., but he wants to drink more water.
   a. juice b. cola c. milk d. tea
4. Dareen's mom makes yummy ....
   a. milkshake b. burgers c. salads d. candy

Activity 2 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. What does Judy do on the weekend? ....
2. Who doesn't like cola? ....

You will learn to practice making sentences with (and) or (but).

ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: التدرُّب على تكوين جُمل باستخدام (and) أو (but).



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

And & But و / لكن

and و

- We use (**and**) to add two ideas together, as follows:
- نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للجمع بين فكرتين معًا، كما يلي:

sentence (1) الجملة الأولى **and** sentence (2) الجملة الثانية

Ex: – I eat vegetables **and** I exercise.

but لكن

- We use (**but**) to contrast two ideas, as follows:
- نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) لنوضح الاختلاف بين فكرتين، كما يلي:

sentence (1) الجملة الأولى **, but** sentence (2) الجملة الثانية

Ex: – I want to play football, **but** my leg hurts.

Note

- لاحظ أننا نضع الفاصلة comma (,) في نهاية الجملة الأولى قبل كلمة "but".

Lesson 2 Language Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like walking .... I like swimming.
   a. for   b. so   c. and   d. but
2. I don't eat candy, ... I like fruit.
   a. but   b. and   c. to   d. or
3. Nader plays tennis .... he plays basketball.
   a. on   b. but   c. from   d. and
4. I don't drink cola, ... I drink banana milkshake.
   a. also   b. to   c. but   d. and

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. She loves burgers, ... (and) she only eats one a week.
2. I like fruits .... (but) I like vegetables.
3. I don't drink cola, ... (and) I drink fresh juices.
4. I play basketball, ... (and) I don't play football.

Activity 3 Read and join the following sentences using (and) or (but): اقرأ واربط الجُمل الآتية مستخدمًا (and) أو (but):

1. I'm Egyptian. My friend is Chinese.
   I'm Egyptian, but my friend is Chinese.
2. Dad is a scientist. He likes looking at animals and plants.
   ....
3. It's a very interesting place. It's very hot sometimes!
   ....
4. I don't eat candy. I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
   ....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 Read and complete the sentences using (and) or (but): اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا (and) أو (but):

1. I like walking .... I exercise.
2. I love playing video games, ... I only play them on Saturday.
3. I want to practice basketball, ... I'm busy.
4. Hana grows mangoes .... she raises chickens.

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Tarek. I think I'm healthy because I exercise four times a week. I walk to my grandpa's house every weekend. On the way, I can see different houses and shops. I don't drink banana milkshake, but I like orange juice. Mom makes delicious orange juice. Sometimes I eat pizza, but I want to eat more fruits and vegetables. I enjoy running, but I don't like swimming. I also like to play football in the park.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

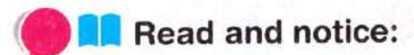
1. Tarek walks to his .... house.
   a. grandma's   b. grandpa's   c. uncle's   d. sister's
2. He likes to play .... in the park.
   a. basketball   b. tennis   c. video games   d. football

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. Why does Tarek think he's healthy?
   ....
4. What does Tarek's mom make?
   ....

Lesson 3 (A) The empty pot: a folktale from China

You will learn
to read a Chinese folk tale.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة شعبية صينية.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

plant	نبات	gardener	بستاني	nothing	لا شيء
garden	حديقة	seed	بذرة	pot	وعاء

Adjectives الصفات

important	مهم	beautiful	جميل	dead	ميِّتة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
live	يعيش	lived	give	يعطي	gave
water	يسقي	watered	take	يأخذ	took
ask	يسأل	asked	win	يفوز	won
happen	يحدث	happened	put	يضع	put

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

long ago ...	منذ زمن بعيد ...	bring back ...	يُعيد ...
worked very hard	عمل حقًّا بجدٍّ	look after ...	يعتني بـ ...

Definitions تعريفات

emperor	إمبراطور	is someone who is like a king	هو شخص مثل الملك
palace	قصر	is where an emperor lives	حيث يعيش الإمبراطور
honest	صادق	is someone who doesn't lie	شخص لا يكذب
competition	مسابقة	is when someone tries to win	عندما يحاول شخص ما أن يفوز

Beginning

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the **emperor**. He lived in a beautiful **palace**. One day the emperor said, "There will be a **competition**. I will give a seed to each **gardener**. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

عاش تشنغ منذ زمن بعيد في الصين. كان أهمّ رجل في الصين هو الإمبراطور. عاش في قصر جميل. في أحد الأيام، قال الإمبراطور: «سيكون هناك مسابقة. سأعطي كل بستاني بذرة، والشخص الذي يستطيع زراعة أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون الإمبراطور القادم».

Middle

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me." Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.

يقول الإمبراطور: «خذوا الوعاء والبذرة وازرعوها. اجعلوها تنمو إلى نبات جميل. ثمّ أعيدوا النبات إليّ». كان تشنغ جيدًا جدًّا في زراعة الأشياء والاعتناء بحديقته. وضع البذرة في الشمس وأعطاها الماء.

But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

ولكن لم يحدث شيء. حاول تشنغ لأسابيع ولكن لم ينمُ أي نبات. كان لدى البستانيين الآخرين نباتات قد نمت. في القصر، جميع البستانيين لديهم نباتات جميلة.

End

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng. "I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow." "Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and **honest**. So you will be the next emperor!"

يسأل الإمبراطور تشنغ: «أين نبتتك؟». يجيب تشنغ «عملتُ حقًّا بجدٍّ. سقيتها كل يوم. لكنها لم تنمُ». يقول الإمبراطور: «إذن أنت تفوز! البذور التي أعطيتها للجميع كانت ميّتة. البذور لا يمكن أن تنمو. أنت الوحيد الجيد والصادق. لذلك ستكون الإمبراطور القادم!».

The moral of the story العبرة من القصة

Honesty is more important than winning. الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is where an emperor lives.
   a. garden b. palace c. school d. club
2. The emperor gave a .... to each gardener.
   a. flower b. plant c. seed d. competition
3. The gardeners planted the seed in a ....
   a. pot b. box c. palace d. cup
4. Someone who is honest doesn't ....
   a. look b. give c. happen d. lie

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصَّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

plant – water – emperor – pot – planted

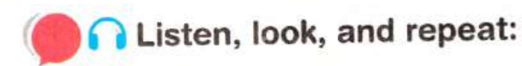
A long time ago in China, there was a competition. The (1) .... gave each gardener a seed and asked each one of them to grow a beautiful (2) .... They (3) .... their seeds in pots. Cheng put his seed in the sun and gave it (4) ....

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Who could be the next emperor in the competition?
   ....
2. Why didn't the seed that the emperor gave to Cheng grow?
   ....
3. What's the moral of the story?
   ....

B Pronunciation

You will learn
the pronunciation of long and short vowel sounds.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: نُطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

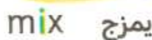
Vowel (a)

letter (a) = short a /æ/	letters (a-e) = long a /eɪ/
bag حقيبة	cake كيك

Vowel (o)

letter (o) = short o /ɑ:/	letters (o-e) = long o /oʊ/
mom أُمّ	nose أنف

Vowel (i)

letter (i) = short i /ɪ/	letters (i-e) = long i /aɪ/
 mix يمزج	rice أرز

Tryout

Say and match: قُل وصِل:

a mom
b cake
c nose

Short vowels
Long vowels

d mix
e bag
f rice

Answers: Short vowels: (a - d - e) Long vowels: (b - c - f)

Activities

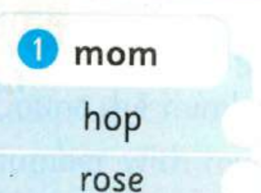
Activity 1 **Look, say, and fill in the missing letter:** انظر، قُل وأكمل الحرف الناقص:

1 b — g
2 n — se
3 r — ce
4 m — x

Activity 2 **Listen and circle the word with the odd sound out:** استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المختلف:

1 grapes – cake – bag – make
2 sit – rice – in – mix
3 mom – nose – bone – stone
4 fox – on – hot – nose

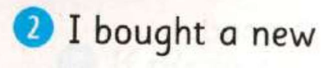
Activity 3 **Say and check (✔) the word that has the same sound:** قُل وضع علامة (✔) أمام الكلمة التي لها نفس الصوت:



1 mom	2 cake	3 rice
hop	bag	fish
rose	grape	five

Activity 4 **Look, read, and complete the sentences:** انظر، اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل:

1 First, ... the ingredients to make cookies.


2 I bought a new .... for my school yesterday.

3 Mona baked a big .... last night. It was delicious.

4 Egyptian farmers grow .... in Egypt.

Language

You will learn
to use the prefix (re).
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: استخدام البادئة (re).

Read, look, and notice:
اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

The prefix (re) البادئة (re)

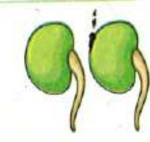
- A **prefix** comes before a verb and changes its meaning.
البادئة تأتي قبل الفعل وتغيِّر معناه.

- The prefix "re" means "again".
البادئة "re" تعني «مجددًا / مرة أخرى».

paint	يدهن	repaint	يعيد دهان
make	يصنع	remake	يعيد صنع
do	يفعل	redo	يعيد فعل
clean	ينظف	reclean	يعيد تنظيف
plant	يزرع	replant	يعيد زراعة

Ex: – The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to **replant** them.

replant = plant them **again**



Lesson 3 Language Activities

Activity 1 Read and choose the correct answer:
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramez (replanted – repainted – remade) his house. Now it looks colorful.
2. You need to (redo – plant – paint) your homework. It is wrong.
3. She (planted – made – remade) rice because it wasn't good.
4. Nada (redid – recleaned – replanted) her bike as it wasn't clean.

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. I want to .... (plant) this seed. It didn't grow.
2. Dad .... (paint) his room. He painted it again.

C CLIL: Math

You will learn
to compare large numbers in ascending order.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة تصاعديًا.

Read and notice:
اقرأ ولاحظ:

- **To read a large number:** لقراءة عدد كبير:
1. Divide the number into two parts. اقسم العدد إلى جزأين.
2. Start reading from the left side. ابدأ القراءة من الجانب الأيسر.

Ex: $\overbrace{544}^{\text{part 1}},\underbrace{432}_{\text{part 2}}$

five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

- We use the comparing signs to compare numbers:
نستخدم علامات المقارنة لمقارنة الأعداد:

< less than أصغر من | = equals to مساوٍ لـ | > greater than أكبر من

- **To compare large numbers:** لمقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة:
- Count the number of digits. If the number of digits is unequal, the number with fewer digits is smaller.
– احسب عدد أرقام الأعداد. إذا كانت أعداد الأرقام غير متساوية، فإن العدد ذا الأرقام الأقل يكون الأصغر.

Ex: 233,346 – 20,665

- If the number of digits is equal, do the following: – إذا كان عدد الأرقام متساويًا، قم بالآتي:
1. Look at the first left digit in each part and compare.
انظر إلى الرقم الأيسر الأول في كل جزء وقارن.
Ex: 655,534 – 698,881
2. If the first digits are equal, then compare the second digits.
إذا كانت الأرقام الأولى متساوية، فقم بمقارنة الأرقام الثانية.
Ex: 655,534 – 698,881

- Arrange numbers in ascending order from smaller to bigger.
رتب الأعداد تصاعديًا من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

Ex: 655,534 < 698,881

Lesson 3C Activities

Activity 1 Look and put (✓) or (✗): انظر وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

a 87,909 > 87,91 (   )

b 20,665 < 10,126 (   )

c one hundred = 100 (   )

Activity 2 Choose the correct sign: اختر العلامة الصحيحة:

a 74,623 ☐ 986,520
< = >

b 52,409 ☐ 31,679
< = >

c 100,000 ☐ 100,000
< = >

d 30,100 ☐ 36,341
< = >

Activity 3 Arrange the numbers in ascending order: رتّب الأعداد ترتيبًا تصاعديًا:

a 40,200 , 8,100 , 70,000 → .... < .... < ....

b 96,245 , 96,600 , 96,410 → .... < .... < ....

c 200,204 , 109,000 , 200,113 → .... < .... < ....

d 52,309 , 59,201 , 56,000 → .... < .... < ....

Activity 4 Write the following numbers in words: اكتب الأعداد الآتية بالكلمات:

a 257,455

two hundred, fifty-seven thousand, and four hundred fifty-five

b 345,124

....

c 233,378

....

Lesson 3 Homework

Activity 1 Say, sort the underlined words, and write:
قُل، صنِّف الكلمات التي تحتها خط واكتب:

– My mom has a nice bag.
– Salma wants to eat rice.
– I can make a beautiful cake.
– I can smell with my nose.

Long a	Short a	Long o	Short o	Long i
....	....	....	....	....

Activity 2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

reclean – remake – replant

1. He wants to .... his seeds because they didn't grow.
2. Maged wants to .... his car. It's dirty.
3. My sister will .... the cake. It isn't good.

Activity 3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Long ago, there was an emperor who lived in China. One day, the emperor made a competition. He told the gardeners that he would give each one of them a seed. He asked them to plant it in a pot, and make it grow into a beautiful, tall plant. Then they would bring the plant back to him. The one who could grow the most beautiful plant from the seed would become the next emperor.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor made a ....
   a. picnic b. festival c. party d. competition
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a. pot b. seed c. plant d. flower

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. Where did the emperor live? ....
4. What did the emperor ask the gardeners? ....

Lessons 4&5 Writing /Presentation

You will learn
to research and make a presentation about a governorate.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: البحث وتقديم عرض تقديمي عن محافظة ما.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

land	أرض	nutrients	عناصر غذائية	million	مليون
guavas	جوافة	fishermen	صيادو السمك	cheese	جبن
Domiati	دمياطي	governorate	محافظة	wheat	قمح
part	جزء	sheep	أغنام	lemons	ليمون
goats	ماعز	famous	مشهور	Damietta	محافظة دمياط

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

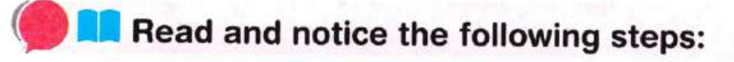
rich in ... غني بـ ...	live in ... يعيش في:
About one and a half million ... تقريبًا مليون ونصف المليون ...	catch thousands of fish يصطاد آلاف الأسماك

Food from Damietta الطعام من محافظة دمياط

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. **Fishermen** catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half **million** people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية. يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الأرز، الطماطم، البطاطس، القمح، الليمون، العنب، والجوافة. يصطاد صيادو السمك آلاف الأسماك من البحر. تعيش الأبقار، الماعز، والأغنام في محافظة دمياط، أيضًا. الجبن الدمياطي شهير جدًا. تقريبًا مليون ونصف المليون شخص يعيشون في هذا الجزء من مصر. الحياة جيدة في دمياط!

Read and notice the following steps: اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:



Steps for making a presentation about a governorate
خطوات عمل عرض تقديمي عن محافظة ما

1. Write down everything you know about the place. - اكتب كل ما تعرفه عن المكان.
2. Think what information you need. - فكِّر في المعلومات التي تحتاجها.
   Ex: Where is it? - أين هي؟
   What do farmers produce there? - ماذا ينتج المزارعون هناك؟
   What is it famous for? - ما الذي تشتهر به؟
   Who lives there? - مَن يعيش هناك؟
3. Write your text of 12 – 18 words. - اكتب نصًّا من 12 إلى 18 كلمة.
4. Draw or glue your pictures. - ارسم أو ألصق صورك.
5. Show your presentation to your friends. - اعرض عرضك التقديمي على أصدقائك.
6. Speak loudly so everyone can hear you. - تحدَّث بصوت عالٍ حتى يسمعك الجميع.

Ex:

Minya governorate محافظة المنيا

Where is it? أين تكون؟
Minya is in Upper Egypt. المنيا في صعيد مصر.
What do farmers produce there? ماذا يُنتج المزارعون هناك؟
cotton and onions القطن والبصل
What is it famous for? ما الذي تشتهر به؟
sugarcane قصب السكر
Who lives there? مَن يعيش هناك؟
about five and a half million people تقريبًا خمسة ملايين ونصف المليون شخص

Minya is in Upper Egypt. The farmers produce cotton and onions. It is famous for its sugarcane. About five and a half million people live in Minya.

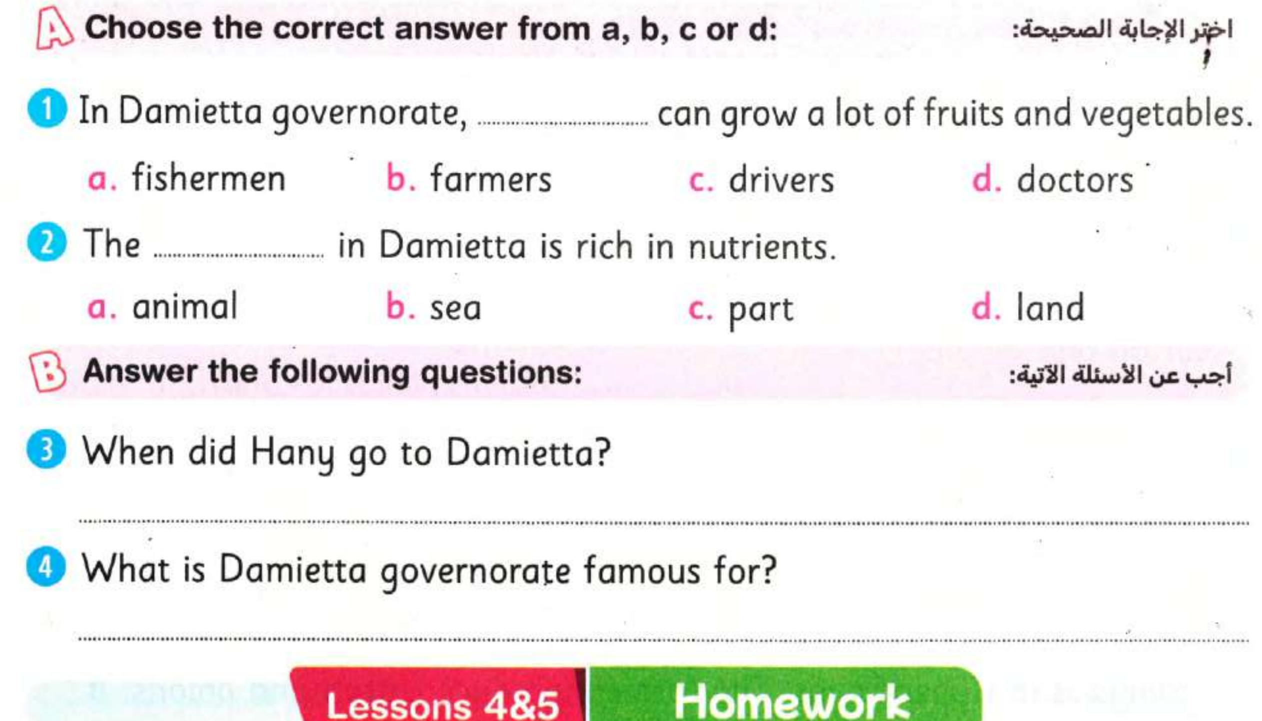
Activities

Activity 1 **Read and correct the underlined words:** اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. Fishermen catch thousands of <u>sheep</u> in the sea. (..................)
2. About one and a half <u>thousand</u> people live in Damietta. (..................)
3. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in <u>rain</u>. (..................)
4. Damietta is famous for Domiati <u>milk</u>. (..................)

Activity 2 **Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Hany went to Damietta with his family last week. He learned a lot about it. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients, so farmers can grow a lot of fruits and vegetables. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Many animals also live in Damietta governorate. Damietta is also famous for its Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!



A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In Damietta governorate, ... can grow a lot of fruits and vegetables.
   a. fishermen b. farmers c. drivers d. doctors
2. The .... in Damietta is rich in nutrients.
   a. animal b. sea c. part d. land

B **Answer the following questions:** أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. When did Hany go to Damietta?

....

4. What is Damietta governorate famous for?

....

Lessons 4&5 **Homework**

Activity **Make a presentation about a governorate that is famous for planting wheat** قدّم عرضًا تقديميًّا عن محافظة تشتهر بزراعة القمح

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary

chicken

grapes

potatoes

bananas

milk

rice

mangoes

sugarcane

onions

watermelon

Phonics

Short vowels

bag
mom
mix

Long vowels

cake
nose
rice

Language

And & But

- We use (and) to add two ideas together.
  Ex: – I eat vegetables and I exercise.
- We use (but) to contrast two ideas.
  Ex: – I want to play football, but my leg hurts.

The prefix (re)

- The prefix "re" means "again".
  Ex: – plant ⟶ replant = plant again
  Ex: – The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to replant them.

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Food from Egypt

- Mom made a special and delicious lunch for herself and Maged.
أعدّت الأمُّ غداءً مميزًا ولذيذًا لها ولماجد.
- They talk about food that comes from Egypt. تحدثا عن الطعام الذي يأتي من مصر
- We grow rice in Egypt. نحن نزرع الأرز في مصر.
- We also grow tomatoes and onions. نحن نزرع أيضًا الطماطم والبصل.
- We raise chickens in Egypt. نربّي الدجاج في مصر.
- Egyptian farmers produce many things for us to eat.
المزارعون المصريون ينتجون أشياء كثيرة لنا لنأكلها.

Lesson 2 I am healthy

- Judy is healthy. She does a lot of sports at school and likes walking.
جودي بصحّة جيدة. إنها تمارس الكثير من الأنشطة الرياضية في المدرسة وتحب المشي.
- She likes fruit, but she doesn't eat candy. تحب الفاكهة، لكنها لا تأكل الحلوى.
- Adam is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He drinks cola, but he wants to drink more water.
آدم في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة في المدرسة. يشرب الكولا، لكنه يريد شُرْب المزيد من الماء.
- Dareen thinks that she's healthy because she likes to go walking with her mom and dad in the desert. تعتقد دارين أنها بصحّة جيدة لأنها تحب التمشية مع والدتها ووالدها في الصحراء.

Lesson 3 The empty pot: a folktale from China

- A Chinese emperor made a competition. He gave a seed to each gardener.
أجرى إمبراطور صيني مسابقة. أعطى بذرة لكل بستاني.
- He told them that the one who could grow the most beautiful plant from the seed would be the next emperor.
أخبرهم بأن الشخص الذي يمكنه زراعة أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون الإمبراطور القادم.
- All the gardeners' plants grew. Only a gardener, called Cheng, couldn't grow his plant. نَمَت جميع نباتات البستانيين. ولم يتمكّن البستاني الوحيد، الذي يُدعى تشنغ، من زراعة نباته.
- The emperor gave them dead seeds. Cheng became the next emperor because he was honest. أعطى الإمبراطور بذورًا ميّتة لهم. أصبح تشنغ الإمبراطور القادم لأنه كان صادقًا.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

lunch	الغداء	farmers	مزارعون	country	بلد
things	أشياء	vegetables	خضراوات	family	عائلة
cola	كولا	nutrients	عناصر غذائية	seed	بذرة
emperor	إمبراطور	gardener	بستاني	wheat	قمح
salads	سلطات	candy	حلوى	palace	قصر
scientist	عالِم	competition	مسابقة	land	أرض
pot	وعاء	plant	نبات	fishermen	صيادو السمك
Damietta	محافظة دمياط	banana milkshake	حليب مخفوق بالموز	video games	ألعاب الفيديو

Adjectives الصفات

delicious	لذيذ	ready	جاهز	special	خاص/مميَّز
healthy	صحّي/بصحة جيدة	awesome	رائع	dead	ميّتة
interesting	شيّق	beautiful	جميل	famous	مشهور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
look	يبدو	looked	make	يُعدُّ/يصنع	made
produce	يُنتج	produced	grow	يزرع	grew
raise	يُربّي	raised	put	يضع	put
practice	يتدرب	practiced	win	يفوز	won
walk	يمشي	walked	give	يعطي	gave
happen	يحدث	happened	think	يفكِّر/يعتقد	thought
ask	يسأل	asked	drink	يشرب	drank

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

three times ...	ثلاث مرات ...	Let's eat!	هيَّا نأكل!
Yum!	لذيذ!	rich in ...	غني بـ ...

Dictation

Lesson (1)

مانجو	....	قصب السكر	....
دجاج	....	موز	....
حليب	....	بطاطس	....
أرز	....	طماطم	....
بصل	....	مزارعون	....
عنب	....	بطيخ	....

Lesson (2)

صحيّ/بصحّة جيدة	....	عالِم	....
حليب مخفوق بالموز	....	سلطات	....

Lesson (3)

إمبراطور	....	بذرة	....
قصر	....	وعاء	....
ميّتة	....	نبات	....
مسابقة	....	حقيبة	....
بستاني	....	كيك	....
أنف	....	أم	....

Lessons (4&5)

محافظة دمياط	....	ماعز	....
محافظة	....	جبن	....
عناصر غذائية	....	مشهور	....
أغنام	....	صياد السمك	....

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
look	looked	see	....
eat	ate	play	....
produce	....	practice	....
raise	....	walk	....
make	....	drink	....
think	....	take	....
grow	....	water	....
talk	....	happen	....
go	....	give	....
live	....	ask	....
put	....	win	....

Writing Station حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Damietta governorate"

What is Damietta famous for? ⟶ Domiati cheese

How is life in Damietta? ⟶ good and nice

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل عبارة من إجابات الأسئلة الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:

noun اسم

- Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese.
- Life is good and nice in Damietta.

conjunction رابط

Model Paragraph

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. Life is good and nice in Damietta.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Egyptian farmers"

Which animals do Egyptian farmers raise? ⟶ chickens

What do they grow? ⟶ vegetables and fruits

noun

- Egyptian farmers raise .... in Egypt.
- They grow vegetables .... fruits.

conjunction

....

....

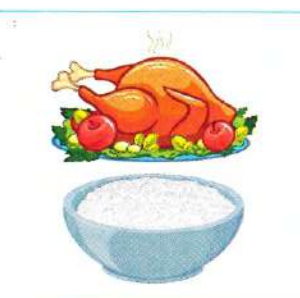
....

Important Paragraphs

Food that comes from Egypt

rice – chickens

There is a lot of food that comes from Egypt. We grow **rice** in Egypt. We also raise **chickens**.



Your healthy life

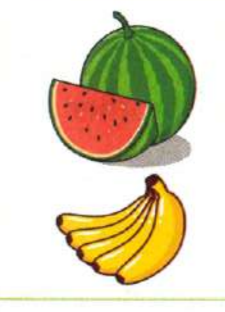
sports – cola

I do a lot of **sports** at school. I don't drink **cola**. I like to eat different fruits.

Your favorite food

fruits – burgers

I like fruit. My favorite **fruits** are bananas and watermelon. I love **burgers**, but I only eat one a week.



Food from Damietta

grow – catch

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can **grow** rice and guavas. Fishermen **catch** fish.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

bananas – ~~chicken~~ – grapes – mangoes – milk – onions – potatoes – rice – sugarcane – watermelon

1 chicken
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....

2 Circle the correct word in each sentence: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة في كل جملة:

1. Faten loves ice cream **and/but** chocolate.
2. My brother is Egyptian, **and/but** his wife is French.
3. Waleed speaks English, **and/but** he can't speak Chinese.
4. We wash the potatoes **and/but** cut them into pieces.

3 Circle the correct meaning: ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح:

1. An **emperor** is someone who is like a ....
   a. king b. farmer
2. A **palace** is where an emperor ....
   a. travels b. lives
3. Someone who is **honest** ....
   a. does not lie b. lies
4. In a **competition** someone tries to ....
   a. win b. lose

Test 1 on unit (1)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cheng lived in ....
   a. Egypt b. China c. France d. Canada
2. Cheng was a good ....
   a. gardener b. teacher c. farmer d. engineer
3. The emperor would give a .... to each gardener.
   a. plant b. palace c. seed d. flower
4. The one who could .... the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor.
   a. eat b. water c. happen d. grow

(محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
   a. teachers b. doctors c. farmers d. fishermen

(محافظة الأقصر - إدارة البياضية التعليمية)

2. Farmers .... chickens to get eggs and meat.
   a. eat b. raise c. grow d. drink

(محافظة دمياط - إدارة الزرقا التعليمية)

3. Mangoes and bananas are my favorite ....
   a. sports b. colors c. fruits d. books

(محافظة الفيوم - إدارة سنورس التعليمية)

4. My dad is a .... He likes looking at animals and plants.
   a. scientist b. farmer c. doctor d. gardener

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق التعليمية)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheese – fishermen – Life – farmers – catch

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The (1) .... can grow rice, wheat, and guavas. Fishermen (2) .... thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati (3) .... is very delicious. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. (4) .... is good in Damietta.

(محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العامرية التعليمية)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. He lives with his family. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. In the village, farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They also grow some fruits like lemons and grapes. They raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is really good in the village.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is a young .... boy.
   a. French b. Egyptian c. American d. Chinese
2. Farmers grow fruits like ....
   a. sugarcane b. rice c. potatoes d. grapes

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do farmers raise?

....

4. What does Omar's mom make?

....

(محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She wants to play football, ... (and) she can't play it.

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة التبين التعليمية)

2. I play football .... (but) I eat vegetables. (محافظة قنا - إدارة قنا التعليمية)
3. I drink cola, ... (and) I want to drink more water.

(محافظة الغربية - إدارة زفتى التعليمية)

4. I painted my room again. I .... (painted) it.

(محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوه التعليمية)

6 Punctuate the following:

– What do the egyptian farmers produce (محافظة الغربية - إدارة تلا التعليمية)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Egyptian farmers"

(chickens – grow)

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط الإسكندرية التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (1)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maged asked his .... about Egyptian farmers.
   a. dad b. mom c. sister d. uncle
2. Egyptian farmers .... fruits and many vegetables.
   a. help b. think c. produce d. talk
3. Egyptian farmers raise ....
   a. chickens b. sheep c. cats d. goats
4. Egyptian food is ....
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. ready d. healthy

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is where an emperor lives.
   a. palace b. farm c. house d. garden
2. She is .... She doesn't lie.
   a. beautiful b. tall c. important d. honest
3. He is .... He eats fruits and likes sports.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. important d. delicious
4. We .... rice and lemons in our country.
   a. raise b. grow c. drink d. play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eat – onions – grow – bananas – raise

In Egypt, farmers produce a lot of food. They (1) .... fruits like grapes and mangoes, and vegetables like (2) .... and potatoes. Egyptian farmers also grow rice that we (3) .... for lunch. They (4) .... chickens for us to get eggs. Chickens are very delicious.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

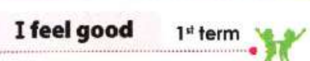
The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers there can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, guavas, and lemons. Many fishermen catch a large number of fish in the sea. There are a lot of animals that live there like cows, goats, and sheep. Domiati cheese is very famous. Everyone enjoys eating <u>it</u>. About one and a half million people live in Damietta. Life is good in Damietta.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The land in Damietta is .... in nutrients.
   a. poor b. rich c. healthy d. bad
2. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to ....
   a. fish b. wheat c. Domiati cheese d. sheep

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?
   ....
4. How many people live in Damietta?
   ....



(C) Writing

5 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. The milkshake isn't delicious. I want to .... (make) it.
2. She likes tomatoes .... (but) she likes bananas.
3. I eat vegetables .... (but) I drink milk.
4. I like to sing, ... (so) I'm not very good at it.

6 **Punctuate the following:**

– cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew.

....

7 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

"Your healthy life"

(sports – cola)

....

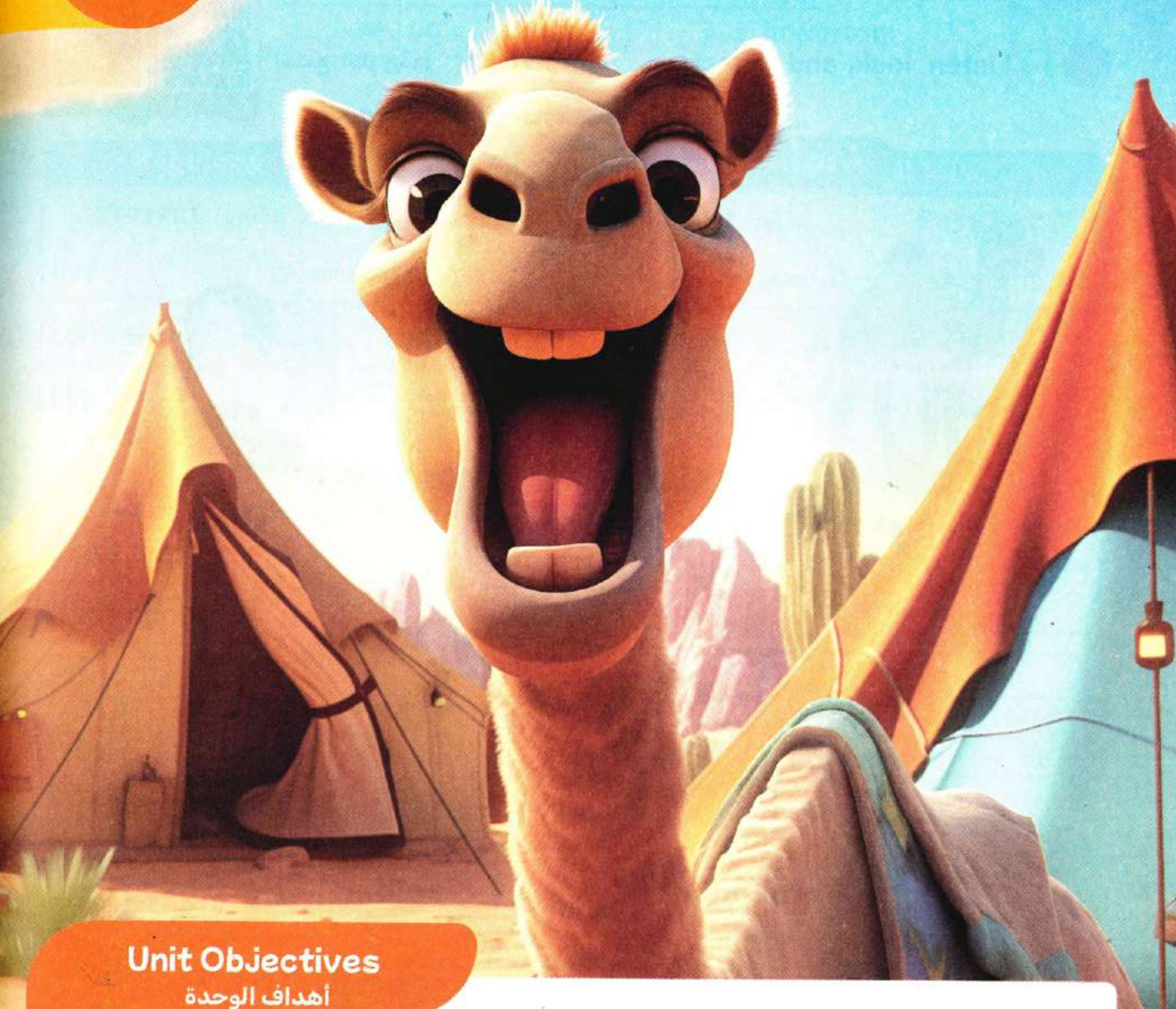
....

....

....

....

Unit 2 Desert Animals



Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
- practice making comparisons.
- listen to a short story.
- learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.
- describe two animals.
- write a fact file.
- research and make a poster.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن حيوانات الصحراء.
- أتدرّب على عمل مقارنات.
- أستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- أتعلم عن الفرق بين صوتي الـ /p/ و الـ /b/.
- أصف حيوانين.
- أكتب ملف حقائق.
- أبحث وأصنع ملصقًا.

Did you know?

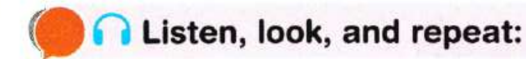
- The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

هل كنت تعلم ؟

- تغطي الصحراء الكبرى أجزاءً كبيرة من عشر دول في أفريقيا. إنها كبيرة جدًا، لكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر!

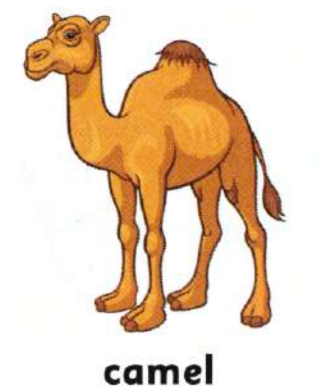
Lesson 1 Animals in Egypt

You will learn
vocabulary about animals.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلّق بالحيوانات.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

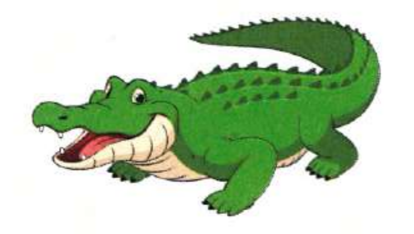
Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية



camel
جَمل

fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك

snake
ثعبان



crocodile
تمساح

spider
عنكبوت

Other Words كلمات أخرى

insects
حشرات

birds
طيور

lizards
سحالي

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

animals	حيوانات	country	بلد	job	وظيفة/عمل

Adjectives الصفات

huge	ضخم	scary	مخيف	helpful	مفيد/مساعد
dangerous	خطير	ugly	قبيح	important	مهم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		**Past** ماضي	**Present** مضارع		**Past** ماضي
live	يعيش	lived	think	يفكِّر/يعتقد	thought
control	يتحكَّم	controlled	do	يفعل	did
like	يحب	liked	eat	يأكل	ate

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

that's true	هذا صحيح	look at ...	ينظر إلى ...
what about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	aren't they?	أليس كذلك؟

(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- There are many animals that live in Egypt.
  يوجد الكثير من الحيوانات التي تعيش في مصر.
- Spiders are scary, but they are helpful.
  العناكب مخيفة، لكنها مفيدة.
- Farmers like spiders because they eat insects.
  المزارعون يحبون العناكب لأنها تأكل الحشرات.
- Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they do an important job.
  الثعابين والتماسيح خطيرة، لكنها تقوم بعمل مهم.
- They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.
  إنها تأكل الحشرات، الطيور، والسحالي. هذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة.

Conversation

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Mom

1. Look at all these animals that live in our country.
انظروا إلى جميع هذه الحيوانات التي تعيش في بلدنا.

Sara

2. Look at the crocodile, it's **huge**! انظروا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم!

Tarek

3. Huge and **scary**! ضخم ومخيف!

4. I think the spider is scarier. أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.

5. Yeah, but spiders are very **helpful**. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.
نعم، لكن العناكب مفيدة جدًا. فهي تأكل الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العناكب.

6. OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're **dangerous**, aren't they?
حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك؟

7. Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This **controls** the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.
نعم، هذا صحيح، لكنهما يقومان بعمل مهمٍّ جدًا. فهما يأكلان الحشرات، الطيور، والسحالي. هذا يتحكَّم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة. نعتقد أحيانًا أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة، لكنها جميعًا مهمَّة.

Conversation Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders, crocodiles, and snakes do a/an .... job.
   a. dangerous b. scary c. important d. small
2. .... eat insects and the farmers like them.
   a. Spiders b. Insects c. Birds d. Lizards
3. Snakes and .... eat insects, birds, and lizards.
   a. spiders b. crocodiles c. camels d. foxes
4. This controls the .... of these small animals.
   a. size b. color c. shape d. number

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

insects – Huge – helpful – farmers – scarier

Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!
Mom : (1) .... and scary!
Sara : I think the spider is (2) ....
Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very (3) .... They eat (4) ....

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. crocodile – The – huge – is – scary. – and
....
2. controls – of – animals. – This – small – the number
....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what about the snake and the crocodile
....

Lesson 1 **Activities**

Activity 1 **Look and fill in the missing letters:** انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. s – i – er
2. fe – nec f – x
3. c – m – l
4. c – oco – ile

Activity 2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The crocodile is .... and scary.
   a. huge b. small c. little d. safe
2. There are some animals that .... in our country.
   a. look b. control c. think d. live
3. .... and crocodiles are very dangerous.
   a. Birds b. Snakes c. Camels d. Insects
4. Eating insects, birds, and lizards .... the number of these small animals.
   a. lives b. thinks c. controls d. does

Activity 3 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

lizards – Crocodiles – big – small – helpful

I am reading a book about animals. (1) .... are huge. Spiders are scary, but they are (2) .... They eat insects. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they are important. They eat insects, birds, and (3) .... This controls the number of these (4) .... animals.

Lesson 1 **Homework**

Activity 1 **Look and write:** انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

Activity 2 **Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 A crocodile is ...	☐	a has no legs.
2 Snakes and crocodiles ...	☐	b they eat insects.
3 Farmers like spiders because ...	☐	c are huge and scary.
4 Some animals are scary or ugly, ...	☐	d very dangerous.
	☐	e but they are all important.

Activity 3 **Read and correct the underlined words:** اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. Look at the crocodile, it's small! (....................)
2. Spiders are helpful. They eat camels. (....................)
3. Which about the snake and the crocodile? – They're dangerous. (....................)
4. Some animals are scary, but they are all ugly. (....................)

Activity 4 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"Animals in your country"

- What are they?
- Why are they important?

....

....

Lesson 2 Amazing desert animals

You will learn

facts about camels and horses.

ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: حقائق عن الجمال والخيول.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

fur	فرو	milk	حليب	sand	رمال
water	ماء	clothes	ملابس	grass	عشب
horses	خيول	noses	أنوف	eyes	عيون
people	ناس	desert	صحراء	ways	طرق

Adjectives الصفات

amazing	مدهش	beautiful	جميل	strong	قوي
large	كبير	flat	مسطح	noisy	مزعج
delicious	لذيذ	special	خاص/مميز	fresh	عذبة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
carry	يحمل	carried
cross	يَعبُر	crossed
use	يستخدم	used
close	يغلق	closed
help	يساعد	helped
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

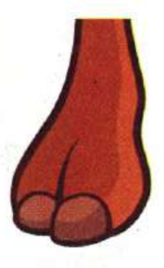
Present مضارع		Past ماضي
are	يكون (للجمع)	were
have	يمتلك	had
drink	يشرب	drank
make	يصنع	made
can	يستطيع	could
sink	يغوص	sank

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

perfect for ...	مثالي لـ ...	Be careful!	كُن حريصًا!
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	Here's why ...	إليكم السبب ...
live without ...	يعيش بدون ...	coming in	دخول
get angry	يغضب	look after ...	يعتني بـ ...

Camels are **amazing**! They're **beautiful**, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is **delicious**. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels are **perfect** for the desert. Here's why:

الجمال مدهشة! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. فهي تساعدنا على حمل الأشياء والناس لعبور الصحراء. حليبها لذيذ. يمكننا استخدام فروها لصنع الملابس! الجمال مثالية للصحراء. إليكم السبب:



Camels have **large, flat** feet so they don't sink in sand.

الجمال لديها أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة، لذا فهي لا تغوص في الرمال.

Camels can live without water for a long time.

يمكن أن تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لمدة طويلة.

Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

للجمال طرق مميّزة لإغلاق أنوفها وعيونها لمنع الرمال من دخولها.

But be careful! Camels are very **noisy** and they can get angry.

لكن كُن حريصًا! الجمال مزعجة جدًا ويمكن أن تغضب.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

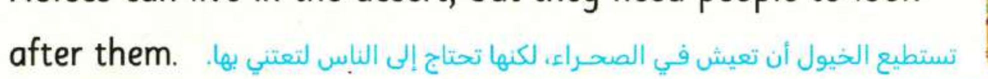
Fact file about the differences between horses and camels
ملف حقائق عن الاختلافات بين الخيول والجمال

	Horse	Camel
How tall is it? كم يبلغ طوله؟	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it? كم يبلغ وزنه؟	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it? كم تبلغ سرعته؟	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live? كم سنة يعيشها؟	25 - 30 years	40 years

Horses الخيول

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. للخيول عيون كبيرة وجميلة. تأكل الخيول العشب وتشرب الماء العذب.

Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them. تستطيع الخيول أن تعيش في الصحراء، لكنها تحتاج إلى الناس لتعتني بها.



Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (✗): اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

1. Camels are weak animals. ( )
2. Camels help people to cross the desert. ( )
3. Horses have small eyes. ( )
4. Horses eat grass. ( )
5. Camels have large, flat feet. ( )
6. Camels can't live without water for a long time. ( )

Answers: 1. (✗) 2. (✓) 3. (✗) 4. (✓) 5. (✓) 6. (✗)

Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Camels have large, ………… feet so they don't sink in sand.
   a. flat b. angry c. beautiful d. fresh
2. We can use camels' ………… to make clothes.
   a. milk b. feet c. water d. fur
3. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the ………… from coming in.
   a. water b. sand c. milk d. people
4. Horses eat ………… and drink fresh water.
   a. meat b. birds c. grass d. insects

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

delicious – noisy – careful – desert – perfect

Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help people to cross the (1) ………… . Their milk is (2) ………… . Camels are (3) ………… for the desert because they can live without water for a long time. Camels are very (4) ………… and they can get angry.

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Which are taller, horses or camels?
…………
2. What do horses eat and drink?
…………
3. Why are camels perfect for the desert?
…………
4. How long does a horse live?
…………

Language

You will learn
to make sentences using the comparative form.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: تكوين جُمل مستخدمًا صيغة المقارنة.

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Language Focus

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

Adjectives الصفات

- An adjective is a word that describes a noun. It can come:
- الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسمًا. يمكن أن تأتي:

1. before a noun. قبل الاسم **Ex:** – Camels are **strong** animals.
2. after verb to be. بعد فعل to be **Ex:** – Camels are **amazing**!

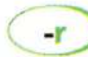
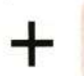
The comparative form صيغة المقارنة

- We use the comparative form to compare between two people, animals, things, etc.
- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين، حيوانين، شيئين، إلخ.

1. Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

- To make a comparative adjective, we add:
- لتكوين صفة مقارنة، نضيف:

-er	لمعظم الصفات	**Ex:** – strong → strong**er**	+ than ...
-r	للصفات المنتهية بحرف e-	**Ex:** – nice → nice**r**	
-ier	للصفات المنتهية بحرف y-	**Ex:** – noisy → nois**ier**	

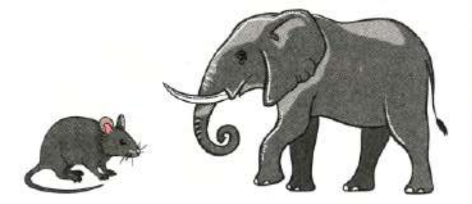



Spelling Rule قاعدة تهجئة

- Adjectives with 1 vowel and 1 consonant at the end, we double the consonant and then add -**er**.
- الصفات التي تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد وحرف ساكن واحد في النهاية، نقوم بمضاعفة الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف -er.

Ex: – thin + n + er = thinn**er**

Ex: – A mouse is **smaller than** an elephant.



– I think cats are **nicer than** dogs.

– Parrots are **noisier than** spiders.

2. Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add "**more**" before the adjective as follows:
- الصفات الطويلة تبقى كما هي، لكننا نضيف "more" بمعنى «أكثر» قبل الصفة كما يلي:

more + long adjective + than ...

Ex:

– Crocodiles are **more dangerous than** fish.

– Horses are **more beautiful than** camels.

Lesson 2 Language Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Camels are .... than horses.
   a. heavy b. heavier c. heavy than d. more heavier
2. The snake is .... dangerous than the crocodile.
   a. more b. very c. the d. much
3. A ruler is .... a pencil.
   a. long b. longer c. longer than d. long than
4. The cat is more beautiful .... the mouse.
   a. then b. thin c. the d. than

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Camels are .... (tall) than horses.
2. Snakes are .... (scary) than spiders.
3. The crocodile is .... (dangerous) than the camel.
4. The train is faster .... (that) the car.

Activity 3 Look and make sentences using the comparative form:
انظر وكوّن جُملًا مستخدمًا صيغة المقارنة:

1. (hippo – tall – giraffe)
   A giraffe is taller than a hippo.
2. (mouse – small – elephant)
   ....
3. (crocodile – beautiful – horse)
   ....
4. (ant – dangerous – snake)
   ....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 Read and complete the sentences using the comparative form of the adjectives between brackets:
اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا صيغة المقارنة للصفات بين القوسين:

1. A book is heavier than a pen. (heavy)
2. The crocodile is .... the camel. (dangerous)
3. The train is .... the car. (big)
4. Snakes are .... spiders. (scary)

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Adam watched a program about animals and birds yesterday. He learned some information about camels and horses. Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. We can use their fur to make clothes! He also learned that horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can also live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adam watched a program about .... and birds yesterday.
   a. insects b. animals c. plants d. people
2. We can use camels' fur to make ....
   a. clothes b. tables c. pots d. chairs

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

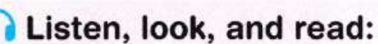
3. How can camels help us?
   ....
4. Why do horses need people?
   ....

Lesson 3 (A) The pelican and the bear

You will learn

to read a fiction story about animals.

ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة خيالية عن الحيوانات.



Listen, look, and read: استمع، انظر واقرأ:

paw كفُّ الحيوان

claws مخالب

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

pelican	بجعة	bear	دُبٌّ	river	نهر
beak	منقار	teeth	أسنان	fish	سمكة

Adjectives الصفات

kinder	ألطف	surprised	متفاجئ/مندهش	ready	جاهز
juicy	لذيذ/كثير العصارة	stronger	أقوى	hungry	جائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present مضارع		**Past** ماضي		**Present** مضارع		**Past** ماضي	
reach	يصل	reached		see	يرى	saw	
lift	يرفع	lifted		say	يقول	said	
open	يفتح	opened		feel	يشعر	felt	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look at ...	ينظر إلى ...	Excuse me	معذرة
looks scared	يبدو خائفًا	take ... out	يُخرِج ... من

Beginning

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

كان هناك بجعة ودبٌّ في النهر، كلاهما جائع جدًّا، كلاهما ينظر إلى سمكة كبيرة، لذيذة.

Middle

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its **paw**. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear. "Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish." The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my **claws**. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish." The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly. The bear is stronger than the pelican.

يصل الدبُّ إلى السمكة. يرفع كفَّه. البجعة تفتح منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدُّبُّ البجعة. ترى البجعة الدُّبَّ. تقول البجعة: «عُذرًا، هذه سمكتي». يتفاجأ الدُّبُّ ويغضب. ويقول: «انظري إلى مخالبي، وانظري الآن إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي». تبدو البجعة خائفة. وتقول بحزن: «أنا آسفة أيها الدبُّ». فالدُّبُّ أقوى من البجعة.

End

The bear looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish." "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears!"

ينظر الدُّبُّ إلى البجعة، ويسألها: «كيف تشعرين أيتها البجعة؟» تجيب البجعة: «أشعر بالجوع». يقول الدبُّ: «أنا أكبر وأقوى منكِ، لكنني أعتقد أنكِ أكثر جوعًا مني، يمكنكِ الحصول على السمكة». تقول البجعة: «شكرًا لك أيها الدبُّ، فأنت ألطف من جميع الدِّببَة الأخرى!».

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bear and the pelican are ....
   a. happy b. excited c. hungry d. thirsty
2. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its ....
   a. tooth b. paw c. beak d. wing
3. The bear is .... and stronger than the pelican.
   a. bigger b. smaller c. thinner d. shorter
4. The pelican opens its .... to take the fish out of the water.
   a. paw b. claw c. arm d. beak

Activity 2 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. What are the pelican and the bear looking at?

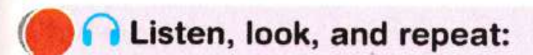
....

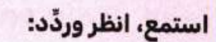
2. Why is the bear kinder than all the other bears?

....

B Pronunciation

You will learn
the pronunciation of /b/ and /p/sounds.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية نُطق صوتي الـ /b/ و /p/.



Listen, look, and repeat: 

استمع، انظر وردِّد:

Play Audio

b /b/

bird
طائر

bee
نحلة

bear
دُبٌّ

beak
منقار

p /p/

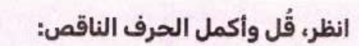
pear
كمثرى

peas
بازلاء/بسلة

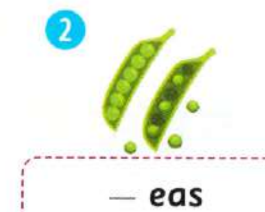
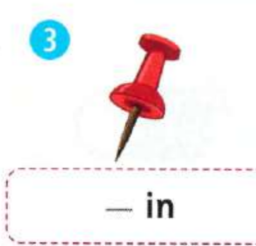
pelican
بجعة

pin
دبوس

Lesson 3B Activities

Activity 1 Look, say, and fill in the missing letter: 

انظر، قُل وأكمل الحرف الناقص:

1.
   _ ear
2. 
   _ eas
3. 
   _ in

Activity 2 Listen and circle the word with the first odd sound out:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت الأول المختلف:

Play Audio

1. pin – pen – bird – peas
2. pelican – bee – pear – pencil
3. peas – bird – bee – beak

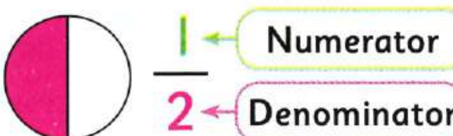
C CLIL: Math

You will learn to put fractions in descending order.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: ترتيب الكسور ترتيبًا تنازليًا.

Read, look, and notice: اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Remember

- A fraction represents a part of a whole. يمثل الكسر جزءًا من الكل.

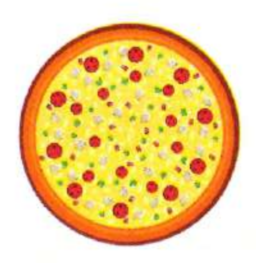


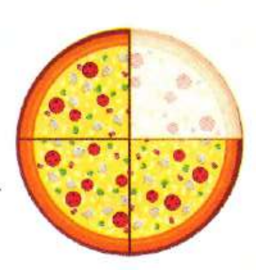
$\frac{1}{2}$

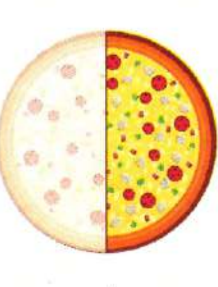
Numerator (1): It refers to the number of the parts taken/colored from the figure. يشير البسط إلى عدد الأجزاء المأخوذة/الملونة من الشكل.

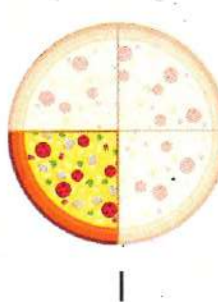
Denominator (2): It refers to the total number of the parts of the figure. يشير المقام إلى العدد الإجمالي لأجزاء الشكل.

- Arranging fractions in descending order (from bigger to smaller):
ترتيب الكسور ترتيبًا تنازليًا (من الأكبر إلى الأصغر):


whole $\frac{1}{1}$


$\frac{3}{4}$


$\frac{1}{2}$

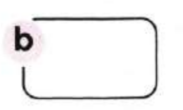

$\frac{1}{4}$

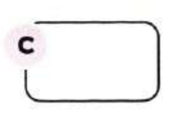
Tryout

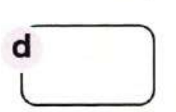
Write the fractions in descending order: اكتب الكسور بالترتيب التنازلي:

$(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{1})$

a ______

b 

c 

d 

Answers: a. $\frac{1}{1}$ b. $\frac{3}{4}$ c. $\frac{1}{2}$ d. $\frac{1}{4}$

Lesson 3 Homework

Activity 1 Say, sort the underlined words, and write:
قُل، صنِّف الكلمات التي تحتها خط واكتب:

- She is eating a <u>pear</u>.
- The <u>pelican</u> is smaller than the <u>bear</u>.
- This <u>bird</u> has a long <u>beak</u>.
- <u>Peas</u> are green.

/p/	/b/
....	....
....	....

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A pelican and a bear are hungry. They see a big, juicy fish in the river. They both reach for the fish. The bear lifts its paw to catch the fish. The pelican opens its beak to take the fish out of the water. The pelican says, "That's my fish." The bear is surprised and angry. The bear says, "Pelican, look at my claws. Now, look at my teeth. That's my fish." The pelican looks scared and flies away.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A pelican and a bear see a fish in the ....
   a. desert b. river c. farm d. sea
2. The bear lifts its .... to catch the fish.
   a. head b. leg c. paw d. tail

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. Which animal is angry?
   ....
4. Why does the pelican fly away?
   ....

Lesson 4 Writing

You will learn
to write a fact file.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس:كتابة ملف حقائق.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

leaves	أوراق شجر	grass	عشب	camels	جمال
horns	قرون	ears	آذان	kg	كيلوجرام
plants	نباتات	the sun	الشمس	cm	سنتيمتر
rhim gazelles	غزلان الريم	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
protect	يحمي	protected
look	يبدو	looked
live	يعيش	lived
need	يحتاج	needed
walk	يمشي	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
eat	يأكل	ate
have	يمتلك	had
drink	يشرب	drank
is	يكون (للمفرد)	was

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

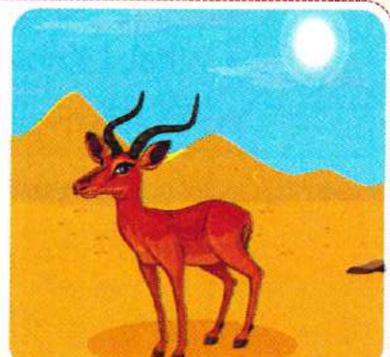
walk around ...	تتجوَّل ...	look for ...	يبحث عن ...
yellow-white coats	كُسوة بيضاء مائلة للاصفرار	How long ...?	كم الطول/المدة ...؟
How heavy ...?	كم الوزن ...؟	about ...	تقريبًا ...
What color ...?	ما لون ...؟	Like camels, ...	مثل الجمال، ...

Animal fact file
ملف حقائق عن حيوان

Rhim gazelle غزال الريم (نحيل القرون)

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat.

تبدو غزلان الريم جميلة جدًا. إنها تعيش في الصحراء الكبرى وتتجول بحثًا عن العشب، أوراق الشجر، والنباتات لتأكلوها.



They have big ears and long **horns**. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

لديها آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة. ويغطيها أيضًا كسوة بيضاء مائلة للاصفرار لحمايتها من الشمس. وهي مثل الجمال، لا تحتاج إلى شُرب الكثير من الماء.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn? كم يبلغ طول قرن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 cm 20 - 30 سنتيمترًا
How heavy is a rhim gazelle? كم يبلغ وزن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 kg 20 - 30 كيلو جرامًا
How long does it live? كم طول المدة التي يعيشها؟	about 14 years تقريبًا 14 سنة
What color is its coat? ما لون كسوته؟	yellow-white أبيض مائل للاصفرار

Read and notice the following tips: اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a fact file
نصائح لكتابة ملف حقائق

- Do some research about an animal and write about:

قم بعمل بحث عن حيوان ما واكتب عن:

K	• What I Know ما أعرفه Ex: Dolphins are not dangerous. They are not fish.
W	• What I Want to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه Ex: How heavy are dolphins?
L	• What I Learned ما تعلّمته Ex: Dolphins are intelligent.

- Use the information from the chart you made and write about your animal.

استخدم المعلومات من الجدول الذي أعددته واكتب عن حيوانك.

- Make sure to include interesting facts about the animal.

تأكد من تضمين حقائق شيّقة عن الحيوان.

- Find or draw a picture for your fact file. ابحث عن صورة أو ارسمها لملف الحقائق الخاص بك.

Animal fact file

Dolphins

Dolphins are very kind animals. They eat fish, shrimps, and jellyfish. They live in the sea. They weigh about 5 kg. They are intelligent and they help people.

What do they eat? ماذا تأكل؟	fish, shrimps, and jellyfish سمك، جمبري، قنديل البحر
Where do they live? أين تعيش؟	in the sea في البحر
How heavy are they? كم يبلغ حجمها؟	about 5 kg تقريبًا 5 كيلوجرامات
Why are they special? لماذا هي مميّزة؟	They are intelligent and they help people. إنها ذكية وتساعد الناس.

Lesson 4 Activities

Activity 1 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. Rhim gazelles live in the <u>sea</u>. (..................)
2. They walk around looking for <u>fish</u> to eat. (..................)
3. They have <u>short</u> horns. (..................)
4. They have yellow-white <u>ears</u> to protect them from the sun. (..................)

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Noura is doing some research about rhim gazelles. Her teacher at school asked her to find interesting information about them and write a fact file. Rhim gazelles are very beautiful animals. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for food. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Noura's teacher asked her to write a .... about rhim gazelles.
   a. poster b. fact file c. diary d. project
2. Rhim gazelles walk around looking for ....
   a. food b. air c. water d. sun

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. Where do rhim gazelles live?
....
4. What do they look like?
....

Activity 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- how heavy is a rhim gazelle ....

Lesson 4 Homework

Activity Write a fact file about an animal you like
اكتب ملف حقائق عن حيوان تحبّه

Lesson 5 Project

You will learn
how to make a poster.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية صُنع ملصق.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

mice	فئران	deserts	صحاري	insects	حشرات
fur	فرو	heat	حرارة	lizards	سحالي
North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	thick	سميك/كثيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
weigh	يزن	weighed	hear	يسمع	heard
need	يحتاج	needed	lose	يفقد	lost

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

around ...	تقريبًا ...	During the day, ...	أثناء النهار، ...
At night ...	في الليل ...	keeps it warm	يبقيه دافئًا

The fennec fox ثعلب الفنك

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 – 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك في صحاري شمال أفريقيا. إنه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. يبلغ ارتفاعه 20 سنتيمترًا. يزن تقريبًا 1 كيلوجرام. يبلغ طوله 30 - 40 سنتيمترًا. أذناه كبيرتان، كبيرتان جدًّا! يحتاج ثعلب الفنك إلى أذنين كبيرتين لسماع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة. يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات، السحالي، والفئران الصغيرة. أثناء النهار، يكون الجوُّ حارًا في الصحراء. يفقد ثعلب الفنك حرارته من أذنيه. في الليل يكون الجوُّ باردًا. يحافظ الفرو الكثيف لثعلب الفنك على بقائه دافئًا.

Lesson 5 Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox .... around 1 kilogram.
   a. loses b. hears c. needs d. weighs
2. The fennec fox loses heat from its ....
   a. mouth b. eyes c. ears d. nose
3. The fennec fox lives in the .... of North Africa.
   a. deserts b. rivers c. seas d. trees
4. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a. leg b. fur c. ear d. eye

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

warm – lizards – ears – deserts – smaller

I have some information about the fennec fox. It is (1) .... than other foxes. Its (2) .... are really big! They help the fennec fox to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects and (3) .... At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it (4) ....

Activity 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- it lives in the deserts of North africa.

....

Lesson 5 Homework

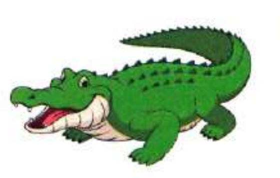
Activity Make a poster about an Egyptian animal that lives in the desert
اصنع ملصقًا عن حيوان مصري يعيش في الصحراء

Unit 2 Review

Vocabulary

spider

camel


crocodile

snake

fennec fox

Phonics

b /b/
bear
bee
beak
bird

p /p/
pear
peas
pin
pelican

Language

Comparative adjectives

- To make a comparative adjective, we add -er/-r/-ier to the short adjective.

Ex: – A mouse is **smaller than** an elephant.

– I think cats are **nicer than** dogs.

– Parrots are **noisier than** spiders.

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add more before the adjective.

Ex: – Spiders are **more dangerous than** cats.

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Animals in Egypt

- There are many animals that live in Egypt.

يوجد الكثير من الحيوانات التي تعيش في مصر.

- Spiders are scary, but they are helpful. العناكب مخيفة، لكنها مفيدة.
- Farmers like spiders because they eat insects. المزارعون يحبون العناكب لأنها تأكل الحشرات.
- Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they do an important job.

الثعابين والتماسيح خطيرة، لكنها تقوم بعمل مهم.

- They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

إنها تأكل الحشرات، الطيور، والسحالي. هذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة.

Lesson 2 Camels

- Camels help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. تساعدنا الجمال على حمل الأشياء والناس لعبور الصحراء. حليبها لذيذ.
- We can use camels' fur to make clothes. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand.

يمكننا استخدام فراء الجمل لصُنع الملابس. الجمال لديها أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة، لذا فهي لا تغوص في الرمال.

- Camels can live without water for a long time.

يمكن أن تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.

- Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. للجمال طرق مميزة لإغلاق أنوفها وعيونها لمنع الرمال من دخولها.

Lesson 3 The pelican and the bear

- The story is about a pelican and a bear. They are hungry. They find a fish and both of them want to eat it.

القصة عن بجعة ودبٍّ. إنهما جائعان. وجدا سمكة وكلاهما يريد أن يأكلها.

- The bear is stronger than the pelican. It has strong claws and teeth.

الدبُّ أقوى من البجعة. لديه مخالب وأسنان قوية.

- The pelican looks scared and lets the bear take the fish.

تبدو البجعة خائفة وتدع الدبَّ يأخذ السمكة.

- The bear is kind. The bear gives the fish to the pelican because it's very hungry. الدبُّ لطيف. يعطي الدب السمكة للبجعة لأنها جائعة جدًّا.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

mice	فئران	heat	حرارة	ways	طرق
paw	كفُّ الحيوان	claws	مخالب	lizards	سحالي
fur	فرو	grass	عشب	horses	خيول
insects	حشرات	pelican	بجعة	bear	دُبٌّ
horns	قرون	leaves	أوراق شجر	rhim gazelles	غزلان الريم

Adjectives الصفات

scary	مخيف	dangerous	خطير	huge	ضخم
helpful	مساعد/مفيد	strong	قوي	important	مهمٌّ
ugly	قبيح	thick	سميك/كثيف	delicious	لذيذ
kinder	ألطف	noisy	مزعج	special	مميز/خاص
juicy	لذيذ/كثير العصارة	beautiful	جميل	fresh	عذب
hungry	جائع	amazing	مدهش	surprised	متفاجئ/مندهش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
control	يتحكَّم	controlled	hear	يسمع	heard
carry	يحمل	carried	drink	يشرب	drank
cross	يَعبُر	crossed	think	يفكِّر/يعتقد	thought
protect	يحمي	protected	lose	يفقد	lost
close	يغلق	closed	say	يقول	said

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

that's true	هذا صحيح	Be careful!	احترس!
keeps it warm	يبقيه دافئًا	look for ...	يبحث عن ...

Dictation

Lesson (1)

....	تمساح	....	عنكبوت
....	ثعبان	....	ثعلب الفنك
....	طيور	....	جَمَل
....	حشرات	....	سحالي
....	مخيف	....	خطير
....	قبيح	....	مفيد/مساعد
....	مهم	....	ضخم

Lesson (2)

....	ملابس	....	فرو
....	قوي	....	خيول
....	رمال	....	مزعج
....	عشب	....	أنوف

Lesson (3)

....	كفُّ الحيوان	....	مخالب
....	دُبٌّ	....	بجعة
....	منقار	....	نهر
....	دبوس	....	لذيذ/كثير العصارة
....	كمثرى	....	بازلاء/بسلة

Lesson (4)

....	أوراق شجر	....	الصحراء الكبرى
....	آذان	....	قرون

Lesson (5)

....	فئران	....	حرارة

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
live	lived	reach	....
think	thought	lift	....
control	....	open	....
do	....	see	....
look	....	say	....
eat	....	feel	....
carry	....	can	....
cross	....	protect	....
use	....	lose	....
close	....	help	....
need	....	hear	....
are	....	weigh	....
have	....	make	....
drink	....	stop	....

حلّها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Rhim gazelles"

(long horns – eat grass)

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة تلا التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل عبارة من العبارات الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:

adjective صفة

- They have long horns and big ears.
- They eat grass, leaves, and plants.

noun اسم

Model Paragraph

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They have long horns and big ears. They eat grass, leaves, and plants.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"The fennec fox"

(big ears – eats insects)

adjective

- It has .... ears.
- It eats ....

noun

....

....

....

Important Paragraphs

Animals in our country

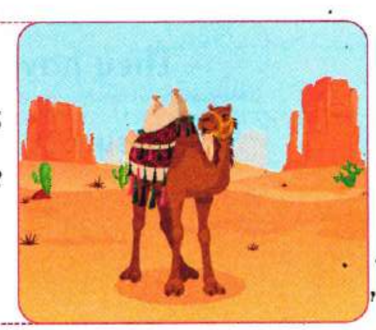
crocodiles – scary

Different animals live in our country like **crocodiles** and spiders. Crocodiles are huge and **scary**, but spiders are scarier.

Camels

beautiful – fur

Camels are **beautiful**, strong animals. They help us to cross the desert. We can use their **fur** to make clothes!



Rhim gazelles

live – horns

Rhim gazelles **live** in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have big ears and long **horns**.

The fennec fox

deserts – eats

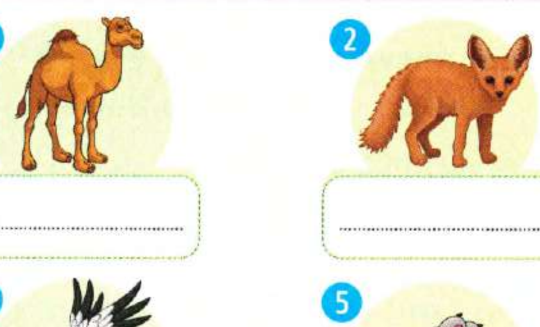
The fennec fox lives in the **deserts** of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It **eats** insects and lizards.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

1 Do you remember the names of these animals and parts of the body? Look and write :

هل تتذكر أسماء هذه الحيوانات وأجزاء الجسم؟ انظر واكتب:



1 .... 2 .... 3 ....

4 .... 5 .... 6 ....

2 Listen and complete the table:

استمع وأكمل الجدول:

tall	....
....	heavier
fast	....
....	bigger
beautiful	more ....
delicious	.... delicious
....	shorter

3 Write sentences to compare:

اكتب جُملًا لتقارن:

1. (snake/ fox/ dangerous)
   A snake is more dangerous than a fox.
2. (elephant/ hippo/ big)
   ....
3. (horse/ giraffe/ tall)
   ....
4. (crocodile/ fish/ dangerous)
   ....
5. (camel/ fennec fox/ small)
   ....

Test 1 on unit (2)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fennec fox lives in the ....
   a. desert b. sea c. city d. ice
2. The fennec fox has big ....
   a. nose b. horns c. tail d. ears
3. The thick .... keeps the fennec fox warm.
   a. coat b. fur c. jacket d. hat
4. It eats .... and small mice.
   a. rice b. meat c. lizards d. pasta

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white ....
   a. eyes b. boots c. coats d. shoes

(محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية)

2. Camels are perfect for the ....
   a. sea b. desert c. lake d. river

(محافظة الغربية - إدارة المحلة الكبرى التعليمية)

3. Snakes and .... are really dangerous animals.
   a. camels b. horses c. cows d. crocodiles

(محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية)

4. The .... can fly high in the sky.
   a. bear b. dog c. pelican d. cat

(محافظة الغربية - إدارة زفتى التعليمية)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eyes – time – feet – grass – water

I like horses and camels. They are amazing and beautiful animals. Camels are heavier than horses. Horses eat (1) .... and drink fresh (2) .... Camels can live without water for a long (3) .... Horses have large, beautiful (4) .... Camels can run very fast in the desert.

(محافظة قنا - إدارة قفط التعليمية)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

There are lots of animals, birds, and insects that live in our country, Egypt. Crocodiles live in rivers and lakes. Spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a. food b. plants c. animals d. jobs
2. Farmers like ....
   a. crocodiles b. spiders c. lions d. lizards

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where do crocodiles live?

....

4. How are spiders helpful?

....

(محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The snake is .... (thin) than the bear. (محافظة دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ التعليمية)
2. The spider is .... (scary) than the ant. (محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة الرياض التعليمية)
3. Elephants are bigger .... (then) cows. (محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية)
4. Crocodiles are .... (most) dangerous than monkeys.

(محافظة سوهاج - إدارة المراغة التعليمية)

6 Punctuate the following:

– the fennec fox has big ears (محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية التعليمية)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Rhim gazelles"

- How do they look like?
- How much water do they need to drink?

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ههيا التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (2)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Play Audio

1. Horses and camels are amazing ....
   a. birds b. insects c. animals d. mountains
2. Horses eat grass and drink .... water.
   a. fresh b. dirty c. clean d. fast
3. .... have large, beautiful eyes.
   a. Camels b. Cows c. Sheep d. Horses
4. .... are slower than horses.
   a. Goats b. Camels c. Rabbits d. Snakes

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Camels are .... They're beautiful, strong animals.
   a. scary b. amazing c. dangerous d. ugly
2. Spiders are very .... They eat insects.
   a. helpful b. thick c. noisy d. fresh
3. Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....
   a. coats b. paws c. horns d. fur
4. Camels have large, flat .... so they don't sink in sand.
   a. hands b. feet c. legs d. ears

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

birds – controls – important – scarier – farmers

Crocodiles, snakes, and spiders are scary, but they do a very important job. Spiders help (1) .... because they eat insects. Crocodiles and snakes eat insects, (2) .... , and lizards. This (3) .... the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Horses are amazing. They have large, beautiful eyes. They live around 20 - 30 years. Camels live longer than horses. Camels are heavier than horses, but horses are faster. Horses like to eat grass and drink fresh water. Camels are perfect for the desert because <u>**they**</u> can live without water for a long time. Horses have strong teeth, but camels have large, flat feet to help them walk on the sand easily.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Horses live .... than camels.
   a. shorter b. longer c. long d. short
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. horses b. camels c. deserts d. teeth

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How long do horses live?

....

4. Why are camels perfect for the desert?

....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The cell phone is .... (small) than the laptop.
2. The cat is .... (heavy) than the mouse.
3. Lions are .... (dangerous) than giraffes.
4. The fennec fox is smaller .... (that) other foxes.

6 Punctuate the following:

– a pelican and a bear are in the river

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

fact file

Where does a fennec fox live?	in the desert
How high is a fennec fox?	20 cm
How heavy is a fennec fox?	around 1 kg
What does it eat?	insects, lizards, and small mice

....

....

....

....

....

3 Unit Why do we grow plants?

Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...
- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
- practice making sentences with the superlative.
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.
- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.
- write the life cycle of a sunflower.
- research and write a short report.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
- أتدرَّب على تكوين جُمل مستخدمًا صيغة التفضيل.
- أقرأ، أستمع وأفهم قصة قصيرة.
- أتعلَّم وأقول كلمات بها الأصوات الساكنة المدمجة /sl/ و /sw/.
- أكتب دورة حياة زهرة عبَّاد الشمس.
- أبحث وأكتب تقريرًا قصيرًا.

Did you know?
- Chocolate comes from the cacao seed.

هل كنت تعلم ؟
- تأتي الشوكولاتة من بذرة الكاكاو.

Lesson 1 Plants and seeds

You will learn vocabulary about the germination process.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلَّق بعملية الإنبات.

Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

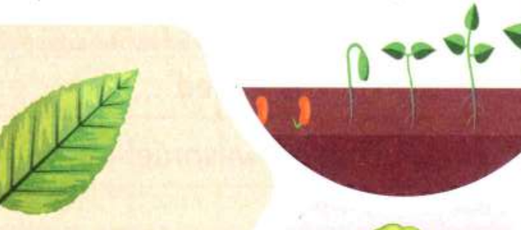
Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية

soil
تربة

flower
زهرة

The germination process
عملية الإنبات

seed(s)
بذرة (بذور)



leaf
ورقة شجر

root(s)
جذر (جذور)

shoot
برعم (نبات صغير)

Note

water (noun)	water (verb)	plant (noun)	plant (verb)
ماء	يسقي	نبات	يزرع

Tip!

leaf
ورقة شجر

plural
جمع

leaves
ورق شجر

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

tomato fruits	ثمار طماطم	plants	نباتات	germination	إنبات
balcony	شرفة/بلكونة	under	تحت/أسفل	inside	بالداخل

Adjectives الصفات

red	أحمر	green	أخضر	new	جديد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
water	يسقي	watered
plant	يزرع	planted
look	ينظر	looked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
have	يمتلك/يتناول	had
grow	ينمو	grew
become	يصبح	became
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Come and look!	تعالَ وانظر!	That is called ...	هذا ما يُسمَّى ...
for lunch	على الغداء	That's awesome!	هذا رائع!

(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Seleem and his dad are talking about tomato plants.
  سليم ووالده يتحدثان عن نباتات الطماطم.
- Tomatoes are green before they are red.
  تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.
- Tomatoes have seeds inside. تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها.
- We plant a seed and the plant grows. نحن نزرع بذرة وينمو النبات.
- We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil.
  نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم، فتنمو الجذور تحت التربة.
- The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.
  يُنبت النبات أزهارًا وتصبح الأزهار ثمار طماطم.

Conversation

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Dad

1. Come and look! تعالَ وانظر!

Seleem

2. What is it, Dad? ما هذا، يا أبي؟

3. Our tomato plants are growing on the **balcony**! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?
   نباتات الطماطم الخاصة بنا تنمو في الشرفة! انظر، هل يمكنك رؤية الأوراق والزهور؟

4. Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green? أوه نعم، لكن لماذا الطماطم خضراء؟

5. Tomatoes are green before they are red. الطماطم تكون خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.

6. How do we grow new tomatoes? كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة؟

7. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called **germination**. We **water** the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.
   الطماطم لديها بذور بالداخل. يمكننا أن نأخذ البذور ونزرع طماطم جديدة! نحن نزرع بذرة وينمو النبات. وهذا ما يسمَّى بالإنبات. نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم، وتنمو الجذور تحت التربة. يُنبت النبات أزهارًا وتصبح هذه الأزهار ثمار طماطم.

8. That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch! هذا رائع! كما أنني وجدت ثمرة طماطم حمراء! هيَّا نتناولها على الغداء!

Conversation Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We grow tomatoes on the ....
   a. garden b. balcony c. lake d. floor
2. We .... the plant every day.
   a. take b. see c. find d. water
3. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a. under b. above c. inside d. on
4. The flowers become .... fruits.
   a. onion b. potato c. carrot d. tomato

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

green – flowers – before – germination – plants

Seleem : What is it, Dad?
Dad : Our tomato (1) .... are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the (2) .... ?
Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes (3) .... ?
Dad : Tomatoes are green (4) .... they are red.

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. roots – The – under – the – grow – soil.
   ....
2. grow – tomatoes? – do – How – we – new
   ....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- we plant a seed and the plant grows
  ....

Lesson 1 Activities

Activity 1 Look and fill in the missing letters:
انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. l _ af
2. r _ o _ s
3. s _ ee _ s
4. f _ o _ er

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a. roots b. flowers c. seeds d. shoots
2. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   a. yellow b. orange c. brown d. green
3. We water the plant and the roots grow .... the soil.
   a. behind b. under c. on d. above
4. Our tomato plants are .... on the balcony.
   a. growing b. finding c. watering d. becoming

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

seeds – under – germination – flowers – water

There are seeds inside tomatoes. We can take the (1) .... and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called (2) .... We have to (3) .... the plant every day. The plant grows flowers and the (4) .... become tomato fruits.

Lesson 1 **Homework**

Activity 1 **Look and write:** انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

Activity 2 **Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصِلْ (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 The roots ...	a	for lunch!
2 Tomatoes have ...	b	the flowers become fruits.
3 The plant grows flowers and ...	c	seeds inside.
4 Let's have tomatoes ...	d	water the plant every day.
	e	grow under the soil.

Activity 3 **Read and correct the underlined words:** اقرأ وصحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1 We plant a shoot and the plant grows. (..............................)

2 Tomatoes are green before they are blue. (..............................)

3 The flowers grow under the soil. (..............................)

4 We cut the plant every day to grow. (..............................)

Activity 4 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"The germination process of tomatoes"

(seeds – grow)

....

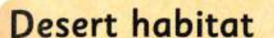
....

....

Lesson 2 **Plants in Egypt**

You will learn about plant habitats.

ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: عن بيئات النباتات.



Listen, look, and read: استمع، انظر واقرأ:

Desert habitat البيئة الصحراوية

tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء (نحيلة الأغصان)

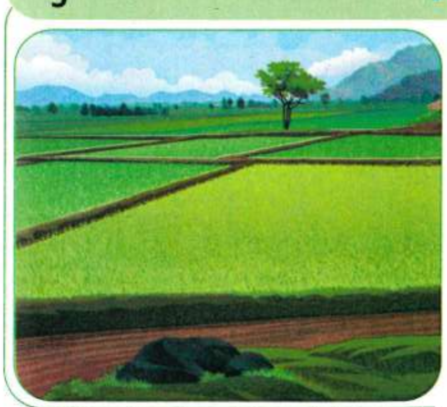
acacia
شجرة الأكاسيا

Rivers and lakes الأنهار والبحيرات

lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس

reed
القصب

Agricultural habitat البيئة الزراعية



bean plant
نبات الفول

orange tree
شجرة البرتقال

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Plant Habitats بيئات النباتات

Desert habitat

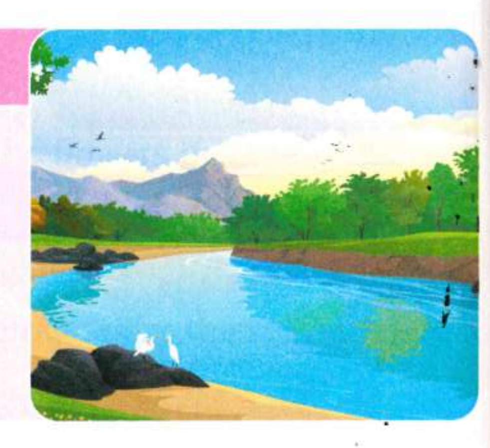
There is not much rain here.
Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من المطر هنا. النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج إلى الكثير من الماء.

Rivers and lakes

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار و البحيرات إلى الكثير من الماء.



Agricultural habitat

Farmers work here.
They grow food for us to eat.

يعمل المزارعون هنا.
هم يزرعون لنا الطعام لنأكله.

Tip!

- A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

البيئة هي المكان الذي تعيش وتنمو فيه الكائنات الحيَّة.

Lesson 2 Activities

Activity 1 Look, read, and number: انظر، اقرأ ورقِّم:

1 bean plant 2 lotus flower 3 tamarisk

a ◯ b ◯ c ◯

Activity 2 Look and write the habitat: انظر واكتب اسم البيئة:

1 .... 2 .... 3 ....

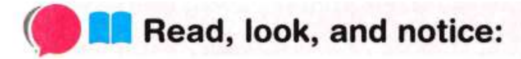
Activity 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some plants live in the agricultural habitat like .... and orange tree.
   a. lotus flower b. reed c. acacia d. bean plant
2. Plants that live in the .... do not need a lot of water.
   a. city b. desert c. river d. lake
3. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of ....
   a. sand b. food c. water d. fruit
4. In the agricultural habitat, ... grow food for us to eat.
   a. farmers b. teachers c. doctors d. nurses

Activity 4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

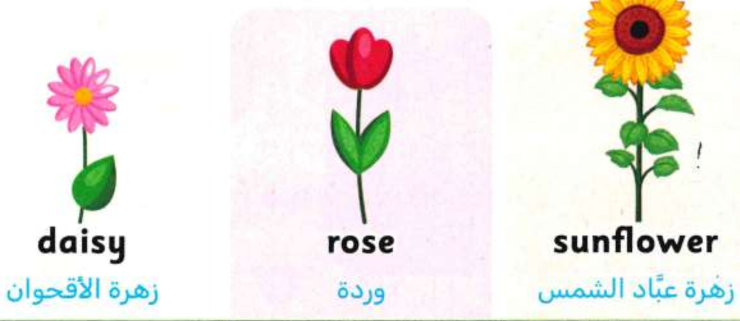
- there is not much rain here

....



You will learn
to make sentences using the superlative form.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: تكوين جُمل باستخدام صيغة التفضيل.

Read, look, and notice: اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

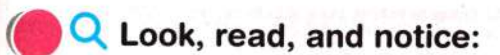


	daisy زهرة الأقحوان	rose وردة	sunflower زهرة عبَّاد الشمس
How big is the flower? كم يبلغ حجم الزهرة؟	2.5 – 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 – 15 cm
How tall is it? كم يبلغ طولها؟	10 cm	60 cm	1 – 3.5 m
How long does it live? كم المدة التي تعيشها؟	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it? كم يبلغ وزنها؟	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

– The rose is **taller than** the daisy.

– The sunflower is **taller than** the rose.

– The sunflower is **the tallest** flower.



انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Language Focus

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- We use the superlative form to compare three or more people, animals, things, etc.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين ثلاثة أشخاص، حيوانات، أشياء، أو أكثر، إلخ.

I- Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

- To make a superlative adjective, we use the following:
- لتكوين صفة التفضيل، نستخدم الآتي:

the + adjective + -est/-st/-iest ...

-est	-st	-iest
لمعظم الصفات.	للصفات المنتهية بحرف e-.	للصفات المنتهية بحرف y-.
Ex: – tall → the tallest	Ex: – nice → the nicest	Ex: – heavy → the heaviest

Ex: – The reed is **the** tall**est** plant.

– My city is **the** nic**est** place to live.

– I have **the** heav**iest** suitcase.

Spelling Rule قاعدة تهجئة

- Adjectives with 1 vowel and 1 consonant at the end, we double the consonant and then add -est.
- الصفات التي تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد وحرف ساكن واحد في النهاية، نقوم بمضاعفة الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف est-.

Ex: – big + g + est = the biggest

Ex: – My cat is the biggest on our street.

2- Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add "the most" before the adjective as follows:
- الصفات الطويلة تبقى كما هي، لكننا نضيف "the most" بمعنى "الأكثر" قبل الصفة كما يلي:

the most + long adjective ...

Ex: – I think a rose is the most **beautiful** flower.

Tryout

Read and complete the table: اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
1.	taller	the tallest
big	2.	3. ....
heavy	4.	the heaviest
5.	6.	the most beautiful

Answers: 1. tall 2. bigger 3. the biggest 4. heavier 5. beautiful 6. more beautiful

Lesson 2 Language Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

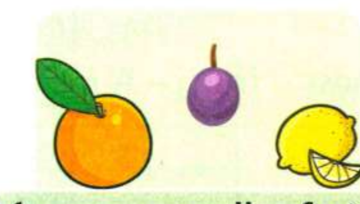
1. Yomna is the .... girl in the class.
   a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. taller than
2. English is the .... subject.
   a. easy b. easiest c. easier d. the easiest
3. I think a rose is .... colorful flower.
   a. the more b. more c. most d. the most
4. A snake is .... scariest animal.
   a. most b. than c. the d. more

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. My mom is the .... (busy) in her office.
2. Dogs are the .... (cute) animals.
3. Today is the .... (hot) day.
4. My brother is the .... (helpful) in the family.

Activity 3 Look and make sentences using the superlative form: انظر وكوّن جُملًا مستخدمًا صيغة التفضيل:

1. (cat – nice – animal)
   A cat is the nicest animal.



2. (grape – small – fruit)
   ....

3. (parrot – colorful – bird)
   ....

4. (daisy – beautiful – flower)
   ....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 **Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:**
اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

agricultural – rivers – rain – tamarisk

1. Farmers work in the .... habitat.
2. There is not much .... in the desert habitat.
3. Plants near .... and lakes need a lot of water.
4. Some plants live in the desert habitat like .... and acacia.

Activity 2 **Read and complete the sentences using the superlative form of the adjectives between brackets:**
اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا صيغة التفضيل للصفات بين القوسين:

1. Amr is ....the tallest.... boy in the class. (tall)
2. This park is .... place in my city. (big)
3. Mona is .... person in my family. (nice)
4. The rose is .... flower. (beautiful)

Activity 3 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. is – most – fruit. – A mango – the – delicious

....

2. the – live. – My city – nicest – is – to – place

....

3. street. – biggest – our – My dog – the – is – on

....

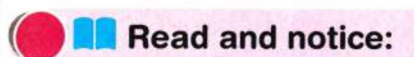
Activity 4 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the sunflower is the tallest flower

....

Lesson 3 (A) Lucas and his farm

You will learn
to read a short story.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة قصيرة.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

farm	مزرعة	oranges	برتقال	land	أرض
noise	ضوضاء	life	حياة	grandparents	الجد والجدة
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	billion	مليار	lemons	ليمون
liters	لترات	millions	ملايين	the United States	الولايات المتحدة

Adjectives الصفات

polluted	ملوث	special	خاص/مميَّز	difficult	صعب
dry	جاف	good	جيد	happy	سعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
decide	يقرر	decided	make	يجعل	made
live	يعيش	lived	bring	يجلب/يحضر	brought
work	يعمل	worked	grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
want	يريد	wanted	do	يفعل	did

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

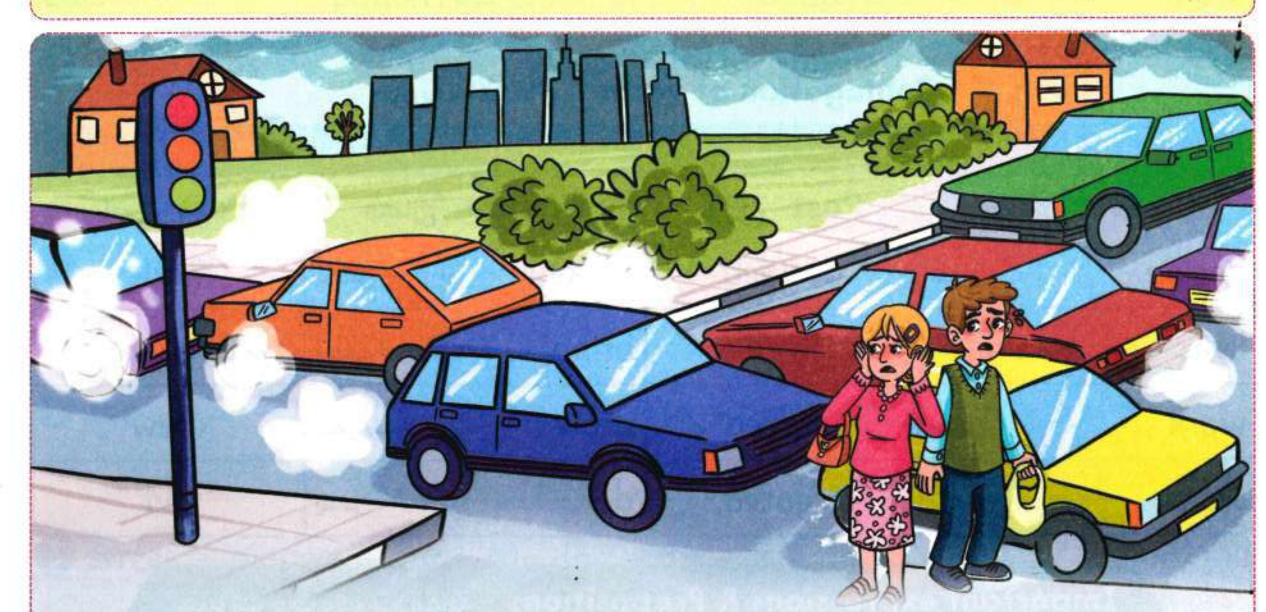
At first, ...	في البداية، ...	a year	سنويًا
on a farm	في مزرعة	proud of ...	فخور بـ ...
Forty years ago, ...	منذ أربعين عامًا، ...	have a good life	يعيش حياة جيدة

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Beginning

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very **special** farm. Forty years ago, the land was very **dry**. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة بالولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميَّزة جدًّا. منذ أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافَّة جدًّا. ولم تكن هناك مزارع. ولم يرغب أحد في العيش هناك.



Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air** and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

عاش جدُّ وجدَّة لوكاس في المدينة، لكنهما لم يحبُّوها. لم يحبُّوا الهواء الملوَّث والضوضاء. أرادا أن يمتلكوا مزرعة. قرَّرا شراء قطعة أرض.

Middle

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of seeds. They used **rainwater** to water the seeds. They needed about **a billion** liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

في البداية، كانت الحياة صعبة جدًّا. عملا بجدٍّ حقًّا وزرعا ملايين البذور. استخدما مياه الأمطار لسقي البذور. لقد احتاجا إلى مليار لتر تقريبًا من الماء سنويًّا. لقد زرعا العديد من الفواكه مثل البرتقال والليمون. وجلبا حيوانات إلى الأرض. وزرعا الأشجار والزهور.

End

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very **proud** of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

اليوم، يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته ووالده. إنهم سعداء للغاية ويعيشون حياة جيدة. إنهم فخورون جدًّا بجد وجدة لوكاس. فقد استخدموا النباتات لجعل الأرض خضراء.

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. At first, life was very .... on the farm.
   a. easy b. difficult c. good d. happy
2. Lucas's grandparents brought .... to the land.
   a. animals b. trees c. flowers d. roots
3. Today, Lucas and his parents are very ....
   a. angry b. sad c. happy d. hungry
4. They used plants to make the land ....
   a. dirty b. green c. clean d. dry

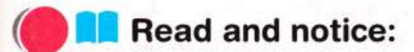
Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
إقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

polluted – fruits – land – farm – animals

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the (1)............ air and the noise. They wanted to have a (2)............ . They decided to buy some (3)............ . They worked hard to grow many (4)............ . They brought animals to the land.

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Where does Lucas live?
   ....
2. How was the land forty years ago?
   ....
3. What did Lucas's grandparents use the rainwater for?
   ....



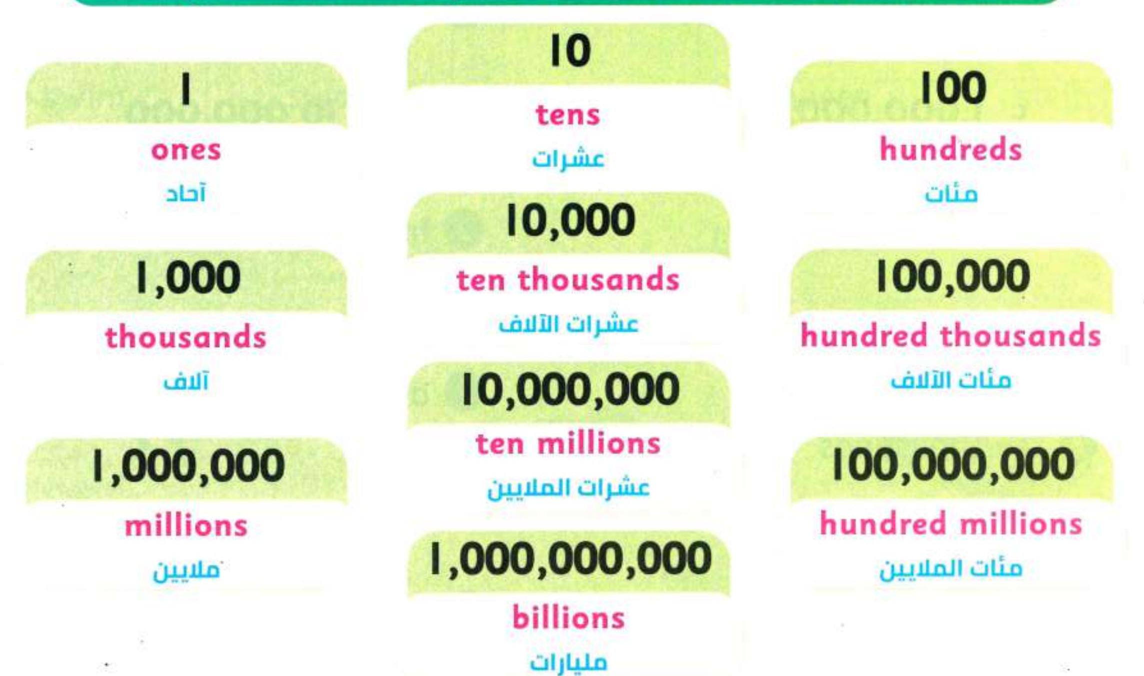
numbers up to billions.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: الأعداد حتى المليارات.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant **billions** of seeds.
مصر تريد زراعة أكثر من 100 مليون من أشجار النخيل في أنحاء البلد. ممّا يعني أننا بحاجة إلى زراعة مليارات البذور.

Note
- A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000. • المليار يتكوّن من ألف مليون.

Large numbers up to billions الأعداد الكبيرة حتى المليارات



لاحظ في هذا التخطيط البياني للأعداد أن كلّ الخانات التي لها نفس اللون تمثل مجموعة عددية؛ حيث:

billions مليارات	millions ملايين			thousands آلاف			ones آحاد		
billions	hundred millions	ten millions	millions	hundred thousands	ten thousands	thousands	hundreds	tens	ones
1,	0	0	0,	0	0	0,	0	0	0

a billion = 1,000,000,000

Lesson 3B

Activities

Activity 1 **Read and put (✓) or (✗):** اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

a ten thousands = 10,000 (   )
b hundred millions = 10,000,000 (   )
c a thousand = 1,000 (   )
d hundred thousands = 100,000 (   )

Activity 2 **Look and choose the correct answer:** انظر واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

a **1,000**
1 a thousand
2 a hundred

b **1,000,000**
1 hundred millions
2 a million

c **1,000,000,000**
1 a billion
2 a thousand

d **10,000,000**
1 ten millions
2 hundred millions

e **10,000**
1 a thousand
2 ten thousands

f **100**
1 a hundred
2 ten

g **100,000,000**
1 a million
2 hundred millions

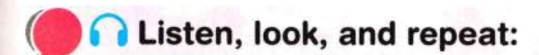
h **100,000**
1 a thousand
2 hundred thousands

Activity 3 **Write the numbers in letters:** اكتب الأعداد بالحروف:

a 10,000,000 = ...
b 1,000 = ...
c 1,000,000,000 = ...
d 100,000,000 = ...
e 100,000 = ...
f 1,000,000 = ...
g 100 = ...
h 10,000 = ...

C Pronunciation

You will learn
the pronunciation of /sw/ and /sl/ sounds.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: نُطق أصوات الـ /sw/ و/sl/.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

sw /sw/

swim	swan	sweets	sweep	switch
يسبح	بجعة	حلوى	يكنس	مفتاح كهربائي

sl /sl/

slice	slippers	sleep
شريحة	نعل/شبشب	ينام

Tryout

Say and match: قُل وصِل:

a swan
c slippers
e swim

1 sw
2 sl

b sleep
d switch
f slice

Answers: 1. (a – d – e) 2. (b – c – f)

Lesson 3C Activities

Activity 1 Look, say, and fill in the missing letters: انظر، قُل وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1.
_ _ an

2.
_ _ ippers

3.
_ _ ice

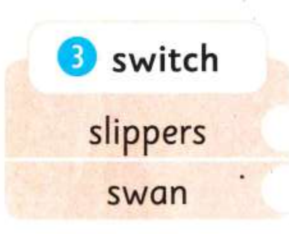
4.
_ _ eets

Activity 2 Listen and circle the word with the odd sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المختلف:

1. swim – slice – slippers – sleep
2. swan – sweets – switch – slice
3. sweets – sleep – switch – swan

Activity 3 Say and check (✓) the word that has the same sound:
قُلْ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمة التي لها نفس الصوت:

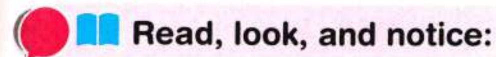
1 sweets	2 slice	3 switch
slippers	sleep	slippers
sweep	swim	swan



Activity 4 Look, read, and complete the sentences: انظر، اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل:

1. She is wearing nice ....
2. I can see a .... in the lake.
3. He can help his mom .... the floor.
4. I .... at 9 o'clock every day.

Language



Read, look, and notice: اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Tip!

- We use the suffix *-ful* at the end of many adjectives. It means *full of*.

نستخدم اللاحقة *-ful* في نهاية العديد من الصفات، وتعني «كثيرًا من».

Verbs/Nouns		Adjectives	
beauty	جَمَال	beautiful	جميل
help	يساعد/مساعدة	helpful	مساعد
color	لوْن/يلوِّن	colorful	ملوَّن
care	يعتني/رعاية	careful	حَذِر
use	يستخدم/استخدام	useful	مفيد

Ex: – The lotus flower is beautiful.

Lesson 3 Language Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My cat is so (beauty – beautiful – beautify).
2. Your painting is (colorful – color – colors).
3. I help my dad. I am (help – helped – helpful).
4. If you have a cough, drink water with lemon. It's (use – useful – using).

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Be .... (care) when you take the cup. It's hot!
2. My grandparents live on a .... (beauty) farm.

Lesson 3 Homework

Activity 1 **Say, sort the underlined words, and write:** قُل، صنِّف الكلمات التي تحتها خط واكتب:

- The swan can swim.
- These slippers are blue.
- I ate one slice of pizza.
- I sleep at 10 o'clock.

/sw/	/sl/
....	....

Activity 2 **Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:** اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

useful – helpful – colorful

1. The plants are .... for us.
2. It's full of colors. It's ....
3. He's a kind and .... man. He helps everyone.

Activity 3 **Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandparents lived on a farm. It was a nice place because there was no polluted air or noise like the city. At first, my grandparents thought the life there was difficult because the land was very dry. But they worked hard to plant many fruit and vegetable trees. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They grew tomatoes, potatoes, rice, mangoes, and apples. They also brought many animals to the farm.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They worked hard to plant many fruit and vegetable ....
   a. roots b. trees c. flowers d. leaves
2. They brought many .... to the farm.
   a. animals b. birds c. food d. people

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. What did the grandparents grow? ....
4. Why was the farm a nice place? ....

Lesson 4 Writing

You will learn about the life cycle of a sunflower.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: عن دورة حياة زهرة عبَّاد الشمس.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

sunflower	زهرة عبَّاد الشمس	again	مجددًا	above	فوق
process	عملية	under	تحت	life cycle	دورة حياة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
face	يواجه	faced	begin	يبدأ	began
die	يموت	died	grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
drop	يتساقط	dropped	get	يصبح	got
germinate	يُنبت	germinated			

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

gets taller	تصبح أطول	After about 4 months, ... بعد 4 شهور تقريبًا، ...

Note

- To arrange a group of events, we use the following words in the same order:
- لترتيب مجموعة من الأحداث، نستخدم الكلمات الآتية بنفس الترتيب:

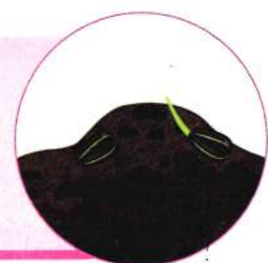
First, أولًا → Next, ثُمَّ → After that, بعد ذلك → After + time, بعد + وقت → Finally, أخيرًا

The life cycle of a sunflower
دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس

1

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.

أولًا، ازرع بذرة زهرة عبَّاد الشمس في التربة. اسق البذرة.



2

Next, the seed **germinates** and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

ثُمَّ، تُنبت البذرة وتبدأ في نمو الجذور تحت التربة.

3

After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

بعد ذلك، ينمو البُرعم فوق التربة. وتنمو الأوراق. ويصبح أطول.

4

After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

بعد ٤ شهور تقريبًا، تتفتح زهرة عبَّاد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

5

Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

أخيرًا، تموت زهرة عبَّاد الشمس وتتساقط بذورها، وتبدأ العملية مجددًا.

Lesson 4 Activities

Activity 1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend grows many plants on his balcony. He told me about the life cycle of a sunflower. First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil and water it. Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It gets leaves. It grows taller. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The seed .... and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
   a. faces b. germinates c. dies d. drops
2. After that, the shoot grows above the ....
   a. seed b. flower c. root d. soil

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. Where do you plant the sunflower seed? ....
4. What happens at the the end of the process? ....

Activity 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the sunflower opens and faces the sun

....

Lesson 4 Homework

Activity Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"The life cycle of a tomato"

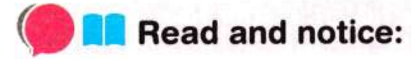
(flowers – After that,)

....

....

Lesson 5 Project

You will learn
how to research and write a short report.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية البحث ع وكتابة تقرير قصير



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

papyrus نبات البردي	paper ورق	sandals صنادل
baskets سلال	the Nile Delta دلتا النيل	weather طقس
Ancient Egyptians المصريون القدماء	famous مشهور	warm دافئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
use يستخدم	used	make يصنع	made
need يحتاج	needed	is يكون (للمفرد)	was

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

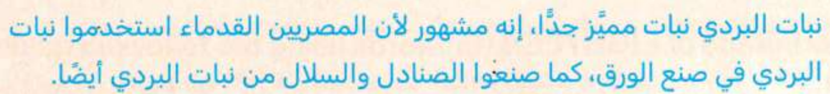
a lot of water الكثير من الماء	near the river بالقرب من النهر

A report about a plant تقرير عن نبات

Papyrus نبات البردي

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.

نبات البردي نبات مميَّز جدًّا، إنه مشهور لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموا نبات البردي في صنع الورق، كما صنعوا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردي أيضًا.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

يحتاج نبات البردي إلى الكثير من الماء والطقس الدافئ لينمو بسرعة. فهو ينمو في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

Read and notice the following tips: اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for making a short report about a plant
نصائح لإعداد تقرير قصير عن نبات

- Search for information. ابحث عن معلومات.
- Draw or find some pictures you can use. ارسم أو ابحث عن بعض الصور التي يمكنك استخدامها.
- Make sure to answer the following questions in your report:
  تأكد من إجابة الأسئلة الآتية في تقريرك:

1. Why is it an important plant? لماذا هو نبات مهم؟
   Ex: Because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
2. What does the plant need? ماذا يحتاج النبات؟
   Ex: Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.
3. Where does it live? أين يعيش؟
   Ex: It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

Lesson 5 Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a. plastic b. soil c. water d. paper
2. Ancient Egyptians made sandals and baskets from ....
   a. sunflowers b. papyrus c. tomatoes d. roses
3. Papyrus needs a lot of .... water to grow quickly.
   a. paper b. weather c. water d. sandals
4. It grows in the Nile Delta near the ....
   a. sea b. desert c. lake d. river

Activity 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- papyrus is a very special plant ....

Lesson 5 Homework

Activity Write a short report about another Egyptian plant
اكتب تقريرًا قصيرًا عن نبات مصري آخر

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

leaf

soil

shoot

seeds

roots

flower

Phonics

sw /sw/

- swim
- swan
- sweets
- sweep
- switch

sl /sl/

- slice
- slippers
- sleep

Language

Superlative adjectives

- To make a superlative adjective, we add -est/-st/-iest to the adjective.

Ex: – The reed is the tallest plant.
– My city is the nicest place to live.
– I have the heaviest suitcase.

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add "the most" before the adjective.

Ex: – I think a rose is the most beautiful flower.

The suffix (-ful)

- We use the suffix *-ful* at the end of many adjectives. It means *full of*.

Ex: – beautiful – careful – colorful – useful – helpful

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Plants and seeds

- Seleem and his dad are talking about tomato plants.
سليم ووالده يتحدثان عن نباتات الطماطم.
- Tomatoes are green before they are red.
تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.
- Tomatoes have seeds inside. تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها.
- We plant a seed and the plant grows. نحن نزرع بذرة وينمو النبات.
- We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil.
نحن نسقى النبات كل يوم، فتنمو الجذور تحت التربة.
- The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.
يُنبت النبات أزهارًا وتصبح الأزهار ثمار طماطم.

Lesson 3 Lucas and his farm

- Lucas lives on a farm in the United States.
يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة في الولايات المتحدة.
- Forty years ago, the land was very dry and no one wanted to live there.
قبل أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًّا ولم يرغب أحد في العيش هناك.
- Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like the polluted air and the noise.
عاش جدُّ وجدَّة لوكاس في المدينة، لكن لم يعجبهما الهواء الملوث والضوضاء.
- They wanted to live on a farm. أرادا أن يعيشا في مزرعة.
- They bought a land and planted millions of seeds.
اشتريا أرضًا وزرعا ملايين البذور.
- They used rainwater to water the seeds. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons.
استخدما مياه الأمطار لسقي البذور. لقد زرعا العديد من الفواكه مثل البرتقال والليمون.
- They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.
جلبا الحيوانات إلى الأرض. زرعا الأشجار والزهور.
- Today, Lucas lives on this farm with his parents happily.
يعيش لوكاس اليوم في هذه المزرعة مع والديه بسعادة.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

balcony	شرفة/بلكونة	germination	إنبات	habitat	بيئة
rivers	أنهار	lakes	بحيرات	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
life cycle	دورة حياة	paper	ورق	reed	القصب
papyrus	نبات البردي	acacia	شجرة الأكاسيا	land	أرض
noise	ضوضاء	liters	لترات	rainwater	مياه الأمطار
billion	مليار	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس	bean plant	نبات الفول
tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء (نحيلة الأغصان)	orange tree	شجرة البرتقال	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء

Adjectives الصفات

polluted	ملوَّث	colorful	ملوَّن	new	جديد
useful	مفيد	red	أحمر	difficult	صعب
careful	حَذِر	green	أخضر	special	خاص/مميَّز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
decide	يقرر	decided	bring	يُحضر	brought
plant	يزرع	planted	become	يصبح	became
live	يعيش	lived	make	يصنع	made
die	يموت	died	find	يجد	found
face	يواجه	faced	take	يأخذ	took
water	يسقي	watered	grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
germinate	يُنبت	germinated	get	يصبح	got

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

At first, ...	في البداية، ...	have a good life	يعيش حياة جيدة
That's awesome!	هذا رائع!	Come and look!	تعال وانظر!

Dictation

Lesson (1)

....	تربة	....	بذرة
....	زهرة	....	جذر
....	بُرعم (نبات صغير)	....	ورقة شجر
....	شرفة/بلكونة	....	إنبات

Lesson (2)

....	البيئة الصحراوية	....	أنهار
....	بحيرات	....	البيئة الزراعية
....	شجرة الطرفاء (نحيلة الأغصان)	....	شجرة الأكاسيا
....	القصب	....	شجرة البرتقال
....	زهرة اللوتس	....	نبات الفول

Lesson (3)

....	مزرعة	....	أرض
....	جافٌ	....	ضوضاء
....	ملوَّث	....	مياه الأمطار
....	حلوى	....	بجعة
....	مفتاح كهربائي	....	نعل/شبشب
....	شريحة	....	ملوَّن
....	حَذِر	....	مفيد
....	جميل	....	مساعد

Lesson (4)

....	دورة حياة	....	عملية
....	زهرة عباد الشمس	....	تحت

Lesson (5)

....	نبات البردي	....	ورق
....	سلال	....	صنادل

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
water	watered	use	....
grow	grew	make	....
get	....	bring	....
live	....	face	....
become	....	die	....
find	....	germinate	....
have	....	begin	....
take	....	drop	....
plant	....	decide	....
need	....	work	....

Writing Station حلّها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Tomatoes"

(water – green)

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل كلمة من الكلمات الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:

verb فعل

- We water the plant every day.
- Tomatoes are green before they are red.

adjective صفة

Model Paragraph

We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Papyrus"

(make - special)

verb

- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to .... paper.
- Papyrus is a very .... plant.

adjective

....

....

....

Important Paragraphs

How to grow tomatoes

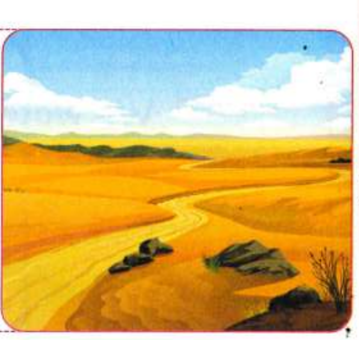
seed – flowers

We plant a tomato **seed** and water it. Roots grow under the soil. The plant grows **flowers**. They become tomato fruits.

Desert habitat

rain – tamarisk

There isn't much **rain** in the desert habitat. Acacia and **tamarisk** live there. They don't need a lot of water.



The life cycle of a sunflower

seed – the sun

First, you plant a **seed.** Next, it germinates. After 4 months, the sunflower faces **the sun**. Finally, it dies and drops its seeds.

Papyrus

Ancient Egyptians – baskets

Papyrus is a very special plant. **Ancient Egyptians** used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and **baskets**.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

1 Listen and say. Then match: استمع وقُل. ثم صِل:

Play Audio

(a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f)

1. shoot
2. soil
3. root
4. leaf
5. seeds
6. flower

2 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals:

اكتب جُملًا لتقارن بين النباتات والحيوانات:

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

   A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest animal.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

   ....

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

   ....

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)

   ....

Test 1 on unit (3)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a. roots b. flowers c. shoots d. seeds
2. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   a. blue b. green c. black d. brown
3. Plants need .... to grow.
   a. water b. meat c. juice d. milk
4. Tomatoes are .... vegetables.
   a. bad b. healthy c. unhealthy d. ugly

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... grow under the soil.
   a. shoots b. leaves c. flowers d. roots

(محافظة سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج التعليمية)

2. There is no much rain in the .... habitat.
   a. desert b. river c. lake d. agricultural

(محافظة دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد التعليمية)

3. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.
   a. sunflower b. rose c. papyrus d. daisy

(محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بور فؤاد التعليمية)

4. We .... the plant every day.
   a. put b. water c. look d. have

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunflower – rivers – tamarisk – agricultural – habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the (1).................... habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near (2).................... and lakes. Acacia and (3).................... grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this (4).................... don't need a lot of water to grow.

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس التعليمية)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Farmers in Ancient Egypt grew many crops near the Nile River. Many of them planted papyrus. It was a very special plant. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river. It needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It was famous and very important to Ancient Egyptians. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also used it to make sandals and baskets.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. rose b. lotus c. papyrus d. tomatoes
2. Ancient Egyptians made .... from papyrus.
   a. baskets b. doors c. tables d. windows

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does papyrus need to grow?

   ....

4. Where does papyrus grow?

   ....

(محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The elephant is the .... (bigger) animal.

(محافظة بني سويف – إدارة بني سويف التعليمية)

2. Her dress is .... (color). (محافظة الأقصر – إدارة البياضية التعليمية)
3. A rose is the .... (more) beautiful flower.

(محافظة كفر الشيخ – إدارة دسوق التعليمية)

4. He is the .... (tall) boy in the class.

(محافظة الإسماعيلية – إدارة التل الكبير التعليمية)

6 Punctuate the following:

– the rose is taller than the daisy (محافظة المنيا – إدارة أبو قرقاص التعليمية)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"The life cycle of a sunflower"

(soil – seed)

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة المنوفية – إدارة الباجور التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (3)

(A) Listening

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plants that live in the .... don't need a lot of water.
   a. desert b. river c. lake d. forest
2. .... and lotus flower live near rivers.
   a. Tamarisk b. Bean plant c. Reed d. Acacia
3. Plants that live near rivers need a lot of ....
   a. air b. water c. seed d. sand
4. The bean plant lives in the .... habitat.
   a. river b. lake c. desert d. agricultural

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We don't like the .... air in the city.
   a. helpful b. noisy c. polluted d. special
2. My parents are .... of me.
   a. proud b. colorful c. expensive d. useful
3. My grandparents used .... to water the seeds.
   a. tomatoes b. rainwater c. lemons d. oranges
4. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a. paper b. cars c. tables d. glass

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

paper – warm – river – famous – sandals

Papyrus was a very special plant in Ancient Egypt. It is (1) .... because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make (2) .... They also made (3) .... and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (4) .... weather to grow quickly.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Ahmed. My favorite subject is science. Yesterday, we had a lesson at school about germination. It's when you plant a seed and it grows. Also, our teacher told us about growing new apples from the seeds inside them. We plant a seed and water the plant every day to help the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become apple fruits. I went home and told my dad about the lesson.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed had a lesson about .... at school yesterday.
   a. papyrus b. germination c. sunflower d. daisy
2. The roots grow under the ....
   a. soil b. shoot c. flower d. leaf

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is germination?

....

4. Why do we water the plant every day?

....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Papyrus was very .... (useful) for Ancient Egyptians.
2. The blue whale is .... (a) biggest animal.
3. I think Eman is the .... (nice) person.
4. Mom thinks koshari is the .... (more) delicious food.

6 Punctuate the following:

– how do we grow new tomatoes

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"The agricultural habitat"

(farmers – orange tree)

....

....

....

....

....

Review 1

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 1 I feel good

chicken

grapes

milk

rice

onions

potatoes

bananas

mangoes

sugarcane

watermelon

Unit 2 Desert animals

spider

camel

crocodile

snake

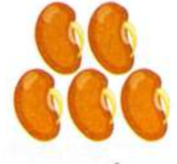
fennec fox

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

leaf

shoot

soil


seeds

flower

roots

Language Summary

Unit 1 I feel good

And & But

- We use (and) to add two ideas together.

Ex: – I eat vegetables and I exercise.

- We use (but) to contrast two ideas.

Ex: – I want to play football, but my leg hurts.

The prefix (re)

- The prefix "re" means "again"

Ex: – plant ⟶ replant = plant again

– The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to **replant** them.

Unit 2 Desert animals

Comparative adjectives

- To make a comparative adjective, we add -er/-r/-ier to the short adjective.

Ex: – A giraffe is **taller** than a horse. – Snakes are **larger** than spiders.

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add more before the adjective.

Ex: – Crocodiles are more **dangerous** than fish.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

Superlative adjectives

- To make a superlative adjective, we add -est/-st/-iest to the adjective.

Ex: – The sunflower is the **tallest** flower.

– This is the **nicest** cat in the street.

- Long adjectives stay as they are, but we add the most before the adjective.

Ex: – I think the cat is the most **beautiful** animal.

The suffix (-ful)

- We use the suffix "-ful" at the end of many adjectives. It means "full of".

Ex: – beautiful – careful – colorful – useful – helpful

Phonics Summary

Unit 1 I feel good

Short vowels	Long vowels
bag	cake
mom	nose
mix	rice

Unit 2 Desert animals

p /p/	b /b/
pear	bear
peas	bee
pin	beak
pelican	bird

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

sw /sw/	sl /sl/
swim	slice
swan	slippers
sweets	sleep
sweep	
switch	

Review 1

Worksheet (1)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the first odd sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت الأول المختلف:

1. bird – bee – pear – bear
2. beak – pin – peas – pear
3. pelican – bear – pin – peas

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A fennec fox .... around 1 kilogram.
   a. hears b. weighs c. eats d. loses
2. She made .... for lunch today.
   a. onions b. bananas c. rice d. milk
3. The sunflower dies and drops its ....
   a. seeds b. roots c. shoots d. leaves
4. .... control the number of small animals, like insects and lizards.
   a. Dogs b. Camels c. Spiders d. Crocodiles

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصَّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

walks – candy – apples – sports – sleeps

Judy thinks that she's healthy. She does a lot of (1) .... at school. On the weekend, she (2) .... to her grandma's house with her sister. She doesn't eat (3) ...., but she likes fruit. Her favorite fruits are (4) .... and oranges.

(C) Language

Activity 4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 I want to run, ...		a I want to repaint it.
2 I don't like the colors of my room.		b thinnest student in the class.
3 Elephants are bigger ...		c tall and big.
4 I am the ...		d but my leg hurts.
		e than dogs.

Activity 5 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. The lion is <u>strong</u> than the dog. (..................)
2. I think koshari is the <u>more</u> delicious food. (..................)
3. I like playing tennis, <u>and</u> I can't play well. (..................)
4. The turtle is the <u>slow</u> animal. (..................)

Activity 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. is – <u>Honey</u> – useful. – lemon – with

....

2. than – are – horses. – <u>Camels</u> – taller

....

3. English – <u>He</u> – with – and Chinese – the tourists. – speaks

....

Activity 7 Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Spiders help us. (helpful)

....

2. I play sports. I go running in the park. (and)

....

3. The giraffe is tall, but the hippo is short. (taller)

....

Review 1 Worksheet (2)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the odd vowel sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المتحرك المختلف:

1. mom – bag – hot – fox
2. nose – rice – line – kite
3. bag – hat – mix – cat

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I think I'm healthy. I eat fruits like ....
   a. watermelon b. chicken c. potato d. rice
2. The .... grow under the soil.
   a. flowers b. seeds c. leaves d. roots
3. Rhim gazelles have long ....
   a. eyes b. ears c. horns d. feet
4. A/An .... is someone who is like a king.
   a. farmer b. emperor c. gardener d. doctor

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

fur – water – feet – desert – air

Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the (1) .... We use their (2) .... to make clothes. Camels have large, flat (3) ...., so they can walk on the sand. They can live without (4) .... for a long time.

(C) Language

Activity 4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 Hana always helps her parents.		a than cats.
2 I drink a lot of water ...		b most difficult subject.
3 Lions are more dangerous ...		c She is helpful.
4 Math is the ...		d and I eat healthy food.
		e It is useful.

Activity 5 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. The blue whale is the bigger animal. (..........)
2. Salma likes healthy food but she exercises every day. (..........)
3. A snake is most dangerous than a fox. (..........)
4. Elephants are bigger then cows. (..........)

Activity 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. sweetest – is – Mango – the – fruit.

....

2. redo – Adel – the – project. – to – needs

....

3. wants to – but – a sore throat. – Noha – she has – sing,

....

Activity 7 Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Dogs are thin. Elephants are fat. (fatter)

....

2. My house is bigger than any house. (biggest)

....

3. Crocodiles are scary. They control the number of small animals. (but)

....

Review 1 Worksheet (3)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the first odd sound out: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت الأول المختلف:

1. slippers – swan – slice – sleep
2. slice – swim – sweep – swan
3. sleep – slippers – switch – slice

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tamarisk and .... live in the desert habitat.
   a. acacia b. reed c. louts flower d. bean plant
2. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in ....
   a. rice b. nutrients c. cows d. seeds
3. The bear lifted its .... to catch the fish.
   a. foot b. eye c. head d. paw
4. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.
   a. tomatoes b. sunflowers c. papyrus d. roses

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصَّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

agricultural – rivers – water – desert – food

Plants can live in many habitats. Some plants don't need a lot of water, so they live in the (1) .... habitat. We can also find plants near (2) .... and lakes. These plants need a lot of (3) .... There are plants in the (4) .... habitat where farmers work.

(C) Language

Activity 4 **Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 Tarek planted the seeds again.		a It is colorful.
2 The box is heavier ...		b He repainted them.
3 I like your painting.		c He replanted them.
4 Jana doesn't drink cola, but ...		d than the suitcase.
		e she drinks fresh juices.

Activity 5 **Read and correct the underlined words:** اقرأ وصحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. A cat is <u>small</u> than a dog. (..........................)
2. The sunflower is the <u>heavy</u> flower. (..........................)
3. Crocodiles are <u>dangerous</u> than spiders. (..........................)
4. He likes football, <u>and</u> he doesn't like tennis. (..........................)

Activity 6 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** ضَع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوِّن جُملًا:

1. is – beautiful – the – <u>A rose</u> – most – flower.

....

2. candy. – is – <u>Chocolate</u> – than – more – delicious

....

3. and – <u>I</u> – eat – exercise. – food – I – healthy

....

Activity 7 **Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:** اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Mona wants to paint her bedroom again. **(repaint)**

....

2. The dog is fast, but the rabbit is very fast. **(faster)**

....

3. Mom's suitcase is more expensive than all our suitcases. **(most)**

....

Unit 4 Where do you live?

Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...
في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town. أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن منازل وأماكن مختلفة في مدينة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions. أتدرّب على تكوين جُمل مستخدمًا حروف الجر.
- read and listen to a short story. أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with /f/and /v/. أتعلّم وأقول كلمات بها الأصوات /f/و/v/.
- write a short article about your village or city. أكتب مقالة قصيرة عن قريتك أو مدينتك.
- research and make a poster. أبحث وأصنع ملصقًا.

Did you know?
هل كنت تعلم؟

- Canada has some very unusual houses. Some houses look like a cube. Other houses are made of ice.
- تحتوي كندا على بعض المنازل غير العادية جدًا. بعض المنازل تبدو مثل مكعب. ومنازل أخرى مصنوعة من الثلج.

Lesson 1 At home

You will learn
vocabulary about types of houses.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلّق بأنواع المنازل.

Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردّد:

Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية

tent
خيمة

houseboat
منزل عائم

apartment
شقة

house
منزل

Other Words كلمات أخرى

kitchen
مطبخ

bedroom
غرفة نوم

bathroom
حمّام

living room
غرفة معيشة

dining room
غرفة الطعام

balcony
شرفة/بلكونة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

street شارع	homework واجب مدرسي	whole بأكمله
cloth قماش	building مبنى	outside بالخارج

Adjectives الصفات

lovely جميل/رائع	favorite مفضَّل	fantastic رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
relax يسترخي	relaxed	can يستطيع	could
help يساعد	helped	see يرى	saw
organize ينظِّم	organized	do يفعل/يؤدي	did

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

That sounds good هذا يبدو جيدًا	let's do it! هيَّا نفعل ذلك!
Look at ... ينظر إلى ...	For me ... بالنسبة لي ...

(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Mom and Talia moved to a new apartment.
  الأمُّ وتاليا انتقلا إلى شقة جديدة.
- Talia's favorite room is the bedroom, where she can relax and do her homework.
  غرفة تاليا المفضَّلة هي غرفة النوم؛ حيث يمكنها الاسترخاء وأداء واجبها المدرسي.
- Mom's favorite room is the living room with the balcony, where she can see the whole street.
  غرفة الأم المفضَّلة هي غرفة المعيشة التي بها الشرفة؛ حيث يمكنها رؤية الشارع بأكمله.
- Talia helps her mom organize the kitchen.
  تاليا تساعد والدتها في تنظيم المطبخ.

Conversation

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Mom

1. Look at our lovely new **apartment**! انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة!

Talia

2. It's fantastic! إنها رائعة!

3. Which is your favorite room? أي غرفة مفضَّلة لديكِ؟

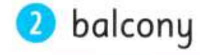
4. For me it's my bedroom. I can **relax** and do my homework quietly. بالنسبة لي إنها غرفة نومي. أستطيع أن أسترخي وأن أؤدي واجبي المدرسي بهدوء.

5. My favorite is the living room with the **balcony**. I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me **organize** the kitchen? الغرفة المفضَّلة لدي هي غرفة المعيشة التي بها الشرفة. أستطيع أن أرى الشارع بأكمله! تاليا، هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تنظيم المطبخ؟

6. That sounds good, let's do it! هذا يبدو جيدًا، هيَّا نفعل ذلك!

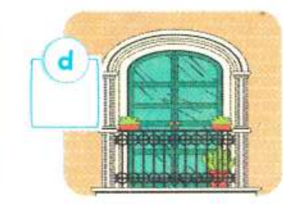
Tryout

Look, read, and number: انظر، اقرأ ورقِّم:


1 bedroom

2 balcony

3 living room
4 kitchen

a
b
c
d 

Answers: a. (3) b. (4) c. (1) d. (2)

Look, read, and notice: انظر, اقرأ ولاحظ:

My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.

انتقلت عمتي إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم سعداء جدًا لأن لديهم شرفة كبيرة.

My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

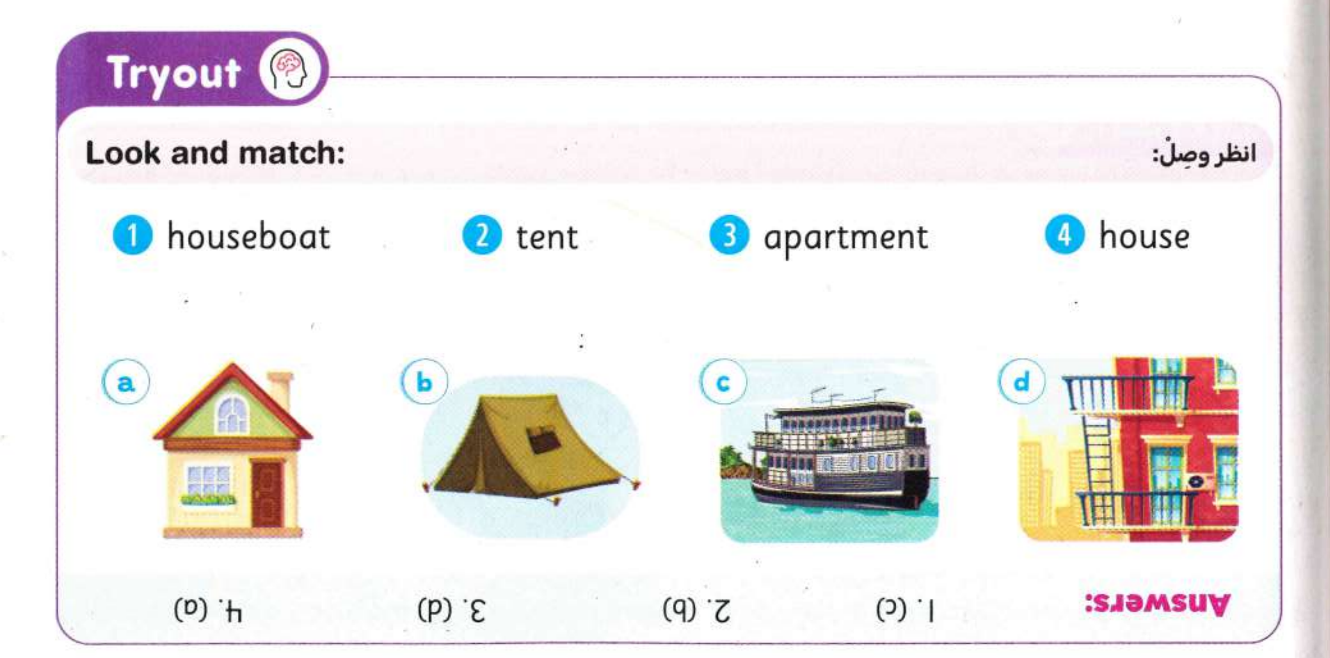
تعيش صديقتي وعائلتها في منزل عائم. إنه صغير، لكنها تحب العيش على الماء.

In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، يعيش بعض الناس في خيمة. هذا البيت مصنوع من القماش.

I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

أحب العيش في منزل لأنه مبنى كبير. يعيش أجدادي معنا. أستطيع أن ألعب في الخارج مع أخي وأختي.



Tryout

Look and match: انظر وصِل:

1. houseboat
2. tent
3. apartment
4. house

a b c d

Answers: 1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (a)

Conversation Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

Play Audio

1. Talia and her mom moved to a new ....
   a. house b. apartment c. tent d. houseboat
2. Talia's favorite .... is her bedroom.
   a. room b. kitchen c. street d. balcony
3. Talia can do her homework .... in her bedroom.
   a. carefully b. quietly c. badly d. nicely
4. Talia's mom can see the whole street from the ....
   a. bedroom b. bathroom c. dining room d. balcony

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

relax – balcony – street – room – kitchen

Hana: This is a lovely apartment!
Mom: Which is your favorite (1) ....?
Hana: For me, it's my bedroom. I can (2) .... and do my homework quietly. What about you, Mom?
Mom: My favorite is the living room with the (3) ....
I can see the whole (4) ....

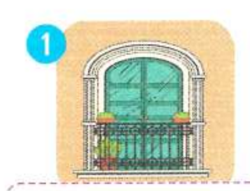
Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. room? – Which – favorite – your – is
   ....
2. street. – can – the – see – I – whole
   ....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- can you help me organize the kitchen ....

Activity 1 Look and fill in the missing letters: انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. 
ba — co — y

2.
a — artme — t

3.
be — ro — m

4.
ba — h — oom

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An .... is a small house where we live on water.
   a. kitchen b. apartment c. houseboat d. tent
2. A: What is your mom making in the .... ?
   B: She is making a cake.
   a. bathroom b. kitchen c. balcony d. dining room
3. I can relax and watch TV in the ....
   a. bathroom b. balcony c. kitchen d. living room
4. A/An .... is a home that is made of cloth.
   a. tent b. apartment c. houseboat d. house

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

desert – balcony – water – lovely – bathroom

Yesterday, I learned about different types of homes. There's a houseboat where you can live on (1) .... It's fantastic but small. Some other people live in a tent in the (2) .... This home is made of cloth. I live in a (3) .... apartment . My apartment is big with a (4) ....

Activity 1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

Activity 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1. I can see the whole street from ...		a. is the living room.
2. I helped my mom ...		b. a houseboat on water.
3. Mom's favorite room ...		c. my big balcony.
4. My grandparents live on ...		d. organize the kitchen.
		e. relax and do my homework.

Activity 3 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. The <u>houseboat</u> is made of cloth. (..................)
2. Mom always cooks food in the <u>bathroom</u>. (..................)
3. In our new apartment, I can see the street from the <u>kitchen</u>. (..................)
4. In my <u>dining room</u>, I can relax and do my homework quietly. (..................)

Activity 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

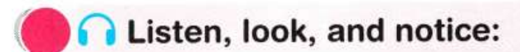
"Your favorite room"

(bedroom – relax)

....
....
....

Lesson 2 Where is it?

You will learn
to describe where homes and objects are in relation to each other.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: وصف مكان وجود البيوت والأشياء حسب علاقتها ببعضها بعضًا.



Play Audio

Listen, look, and notice: استمع، انظر ولاحظ:

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on
على

in
في

above
أعلى

under
أسفل

next to
بجوار

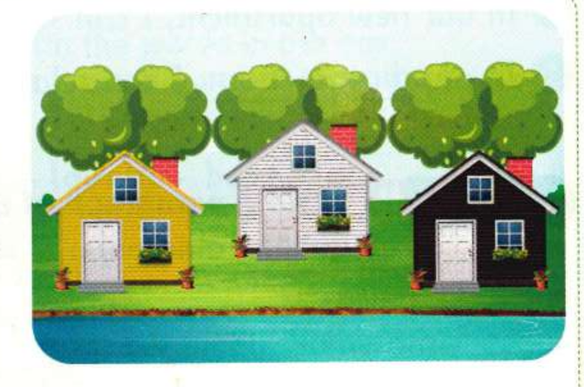
between
بين

behind
خلف

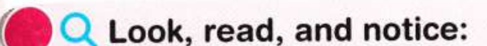
in front of
أمام

Read and look: اقرأ وانظر:

My name's Zein. I live in a village **next to** the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is **between** a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees **behind** the house.



أنا اسمي زين. أنا أعيش في قرية بجوار النيل. أعيش في منزل مع عائلتي. منزلنا ليس الأكبر في القرية. إنه يقع بين منزل لونه أصفر ومنزل لونه بنّي. توجد أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

The school المدرسة
is where we learn.
هو المكان الذي نتعلَّم فيه.

The post office مكتب البريد
is where we send letters.
هو المكان الذي نرسل عَبْره الخطابات.

The supermarket السوبر ماركت
is where we buy food.
هو المكان الذي نشتري منه الطعام.

The hospital المستشفى
is where we go when we are sick.
هو المكان الذي نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.

The office المكتب
is where my mom and dad work.
هو المكان الذي يعمل فيه أمي وأبي.

The shopping mall المركز التجاري
is where we buy clothes and shoes.
هو المكان الذي نشتري منه الملابس والأحذية.

Language

You will learn
to practice making sentences using prepositions of place.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: التدرُّب على تكوين جُمل باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

Read, look, and notice: اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language Focus

Describing the location of things
وصف مكان الأشياء

- We use prepositions of place to say where something is.
- نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنقول أين يوجد شيء ما.

Place (مكان)/Thing(شيء) + preposition of place + place.

Ex: – The couch is **in** the living room.

– My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

Asking and answering about places
السؤال والإجابة عن الأماكن

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
Where is the + place?	Place + preposition of place + place.

Ex: – A: Where is the **shopping mall**?
B: The shopping mall is **next to** the supermarket.

Lesson 2 Activities

Activity 1 Look and circle the correct word: انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1.

   a. post office
   b. school
2.
   a. behind
   b. above
3.
   a. office
   b. supermarket

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. The shopping mall is .... (under) to the supermarket.
2. .... (When) is the hospital? – The hospital is in front of the office.
3. The dog is hiding .... (in) the couch.
4. He is standing .... (front) the TV.

Activity 3 Look and make sentences using prepositions of place:
انظر وكوِّن جُملًا مستخدمًا حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان:

1. (bus – house)
The bus is next to the house.

2. (tall trees – house)
....

3. (doll – table)
....

4. (post office – supermarket – hospital)
....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Zein lives in a village .... to the Nile.

   a. between   b. on   c. in   d. next

2. My house is .... a yellow house and a brown house.

   a. next   b. between   c. above   d. under

3. The .... is where we learn.

   a. school   b. supermarket   c. office   d. hospital

4. The office is where my mom and dad ....

   a. learn   b. sleep   c. work   d. buy

Activity 2 Look, read, and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

انظر، اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

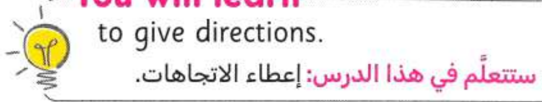
on – between – next to – in front of

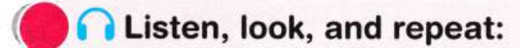
1. The shopping mall is .... the supermarket.
2. There is a van .... the post office.
3. The white house is .... a yellow house and a brown house.
4. There are some books .... the table.

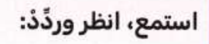
Activity 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the supermarket is where we buy food

....



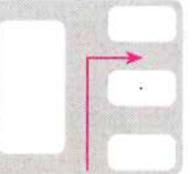




Turn right.

Go straight ahead.

Turn left.

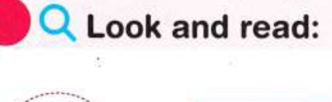


Take the second right.

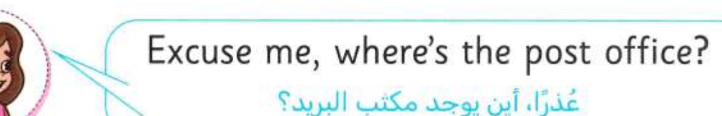
اسلُك اليمين الثاني.

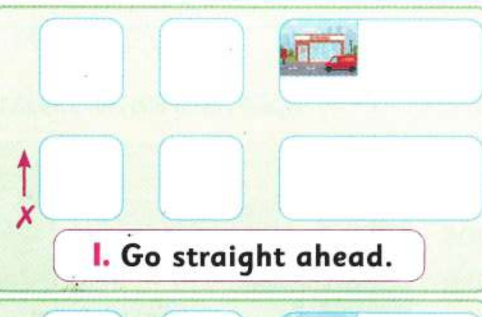
It's on the corner.

إنه على الناصية.

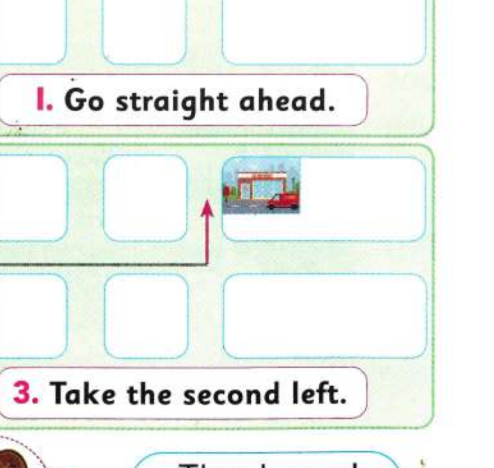


انظر واقرأ:

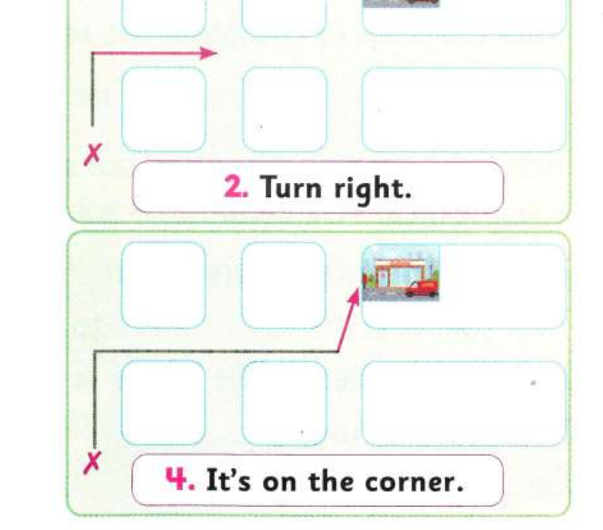




1. Go straight ahead.



3. Take the second left.



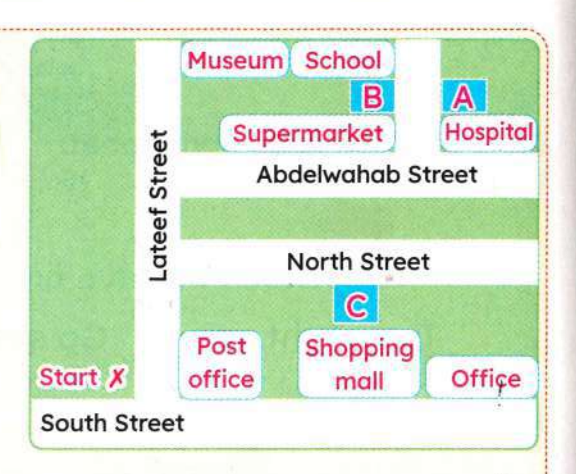
2. Turn right.

4. It's on the corner.

Thank you!

شكرًا لكِ!

Look, read, and follow: انظر، اقرأ وتتبّع:



Hi Dina!
I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.
See you soon!
Fareeda

مرحبًا دينا!
أنا سعيدة جدًا أنكِ قادمة إلى منزلي اليوم. ها هي بعض الاتجاهات. من ناصية الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف، اتّجهي مباشرة إلى الأمام. اسلُكي اليمين الثاني إلى شارع عبد الوهاب. اتّجهي مباشرة إلى الأمام. انعطفي يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلي بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة.
أراكِ لاحقًا!
فريدة

Tryout

Use the map to complete the text: استخدم الخريطة لِتُكمل النصّ:

Hi Fareeda!
Thanks for visiting me. Here are some directions to my house. From the (1) .... of South Street with Lateef Street, go (2) ....
Take the first (3) .... to North Street.
Go straight ahead. My house is (4) .... the shopping mall.
See you soon!
Dina

Museum | School | Supermarket | Abdelwahab Street | Lateef Street | North Street | Post office | Shopping mall | Start ✗ | South Street

Dina lives here.

Answers: 1. corner 2. straight ahead 3. right 4. in front of

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Go .... ahead. Turn right.
   a. straight b. street c. home d. corner
2. A: .... is the bank? B: It's next to the hospital.
   a. What b. When c. Where d. Why
3. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. .... right.
   a. Play b. Make c. Do d. Turn
4. Go straight ahead. Turn .... It's behind the post office.
   a. street b. left c. a head d. next

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

between – where's – right – go – corner

A: Excuse me, (1) .... the museum?
B: From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, (2) .... straight ahead. Turn (3) .... The museum is (4) .... the supermarket and the school.

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. second – Abdelwahab Street. – the – Take – left – to
....
2. where's – post – office? – the – Excuse me,
....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- my house is between the supermarket and the school
....

B Living on a boat

You will learn to read a short story.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة قصيرة.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

boat	قارب	summer	فصل الصيف	tourists	سياح
the Nile	النيل	Chinese	اللغة الصينية	child	طفل
suddenly	فجأة	friend	صديق	parents	والدان/آباء

Adjectives الصفات

interesting	شيّق	small	صغير	happy	سعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
stop	يقف	stopped	go	يذهب	went
shout	يصرخ	shouted	see	يرى	saw
jump	يقفز	jumped	speak	يتحدَّث	spoke
save	ينقذ	saved	swim	يسبح	swam
decide	يقرر	decided	meet	يقابل	met
learn	يتعلَّم	learned	say	يقول	said

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

travel up and down ...	يسافر ذهابًا وإيابًا ...	fell into the river	سقط في النهر
all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	One day, ...	في أحد الأيام، ...

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Beginning

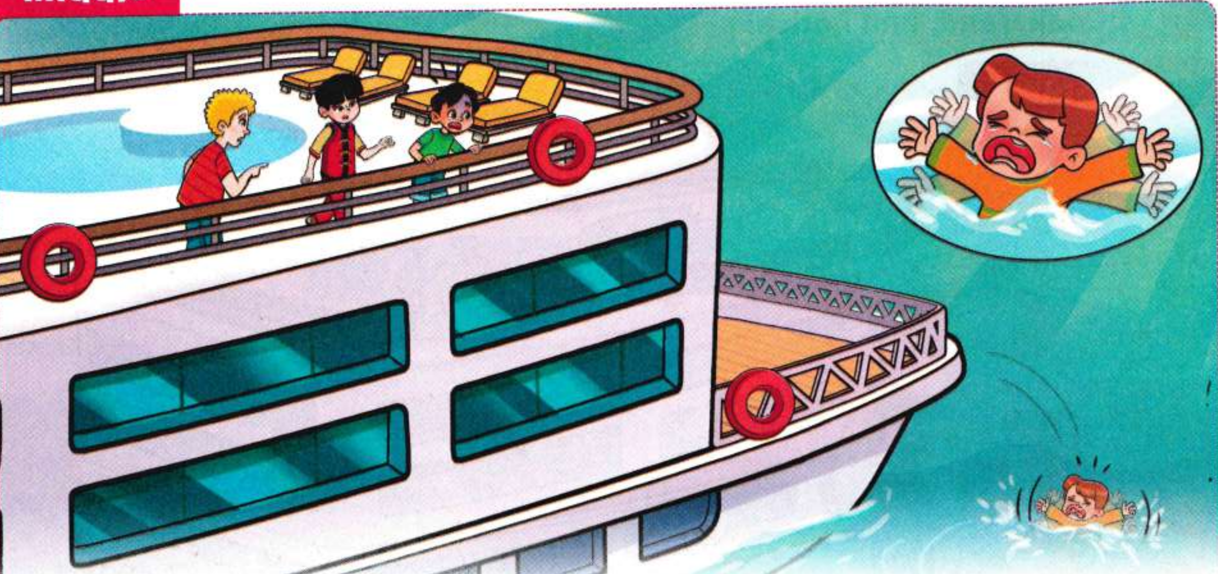
My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

صديقي شريف يعيش على متن قارب في فصل الصيف. والداه يعملان على القوارب السياحية لذلك يذهب معهما. فهم يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا في النيل.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

هو يحبُّ فصل الصيف حبًّا شديدًا. يري الكثير من الأماكن الشيّقة ويقابل أشخاصًا من جميع أنحاء العالم. إنه يتحدَّث اللغة الإنجليزية واللغة الصينية مع السياح.

Middle



One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"

في أحد الأيام، توقف القارب ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال يلعبون. وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر! صرخ الطفل: «من فضلكم ساعدوني!»

End

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said, "Thank you so much!" Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

نادى شريف على والده. فرأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز في النهر. سبح وأنقذ الطفل! ابتسم الطفل وقال: «شكرًا جزيلًا لك!» كان شريف سعيدًا جدًّا، لكنه قرر أيضًا أن يتعلم السباحة.

Lesson 3B Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sherif lives on a .... in the summer.
   a. house b. boat c. building d. plane
2. Sherif suddenly saw a child falling into the ....
   a. sea b. lake c. ocean d. river
3. Sherif likes the .... very much.
   a. fall b. winter c. summer d. spring
4. At the end of the story, Sherif decided to learn to ....
   a. swim b. stop c. shout d. save

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

tourists – save – falling – Nile – run

Sherif lives on a tourist boat with his parents. They travel up and down the (1) .... He meets (2) .... from all over the world. One day, Sherif saw a child (3) .... into the river. Sherif's dad could swim, so Sherif called him to (4) .... the child. Sherif decided to learn to swim like his dad.

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. What languages does Sherif speak with the tourists?

   ....

2. Who saved the child?

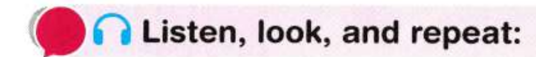
   ....

3. How did Sherif feel at the end of the story?

   ....

C Pronunciation

You will learn
the pronunciation of /f/and /v/sounds.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: نُطق صوتي الـ /f/ و /v/.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

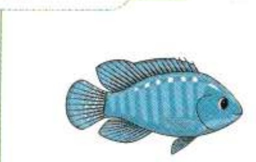
• Touch your neck with your finger. المس رقبتك بإصبعك.

Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move.
قُل كلمة "fish". رقبتك لا تتحرك.

f /f/

face
وجه

fan
مروحة


fish
سمكة

foot
قدم

Say "van". Your neck moves.
قُل كلمة "van". رقبتك تتحرك.

v /v/

van
شاحنة

vegetables
خضراوات

living room
غرفة المعيشة

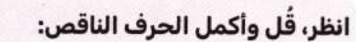
Tryout

Say and match: قُل وصِل:

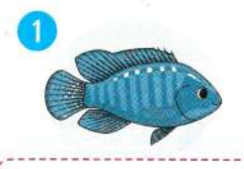
a face	1 f	b foot
c van	2 v	d living room
e fish		f vegetables

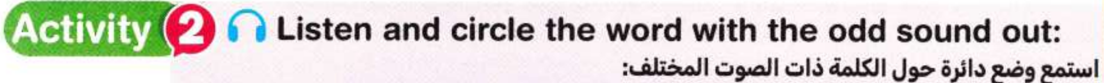
Answers: 1. (a – b – e) 2. (c – d – f)

Lesson 3C Activities



Activity 1 Look, say, and fill in the missing letter: انظر، قُل وأكمل الحرف الناقص:

1.  — ish
2. — egetables
3. — an
4. — oot



Activity 2 Listen and circle the word with the odd sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المختلف:

1. face – van – foot – fish
2. fan – living room – van – vegetables
3. fish – face – vegetables – foot

Activity 3 Say and check (✔) the word that has the same sound:
قُل وضع علامة (✔) أمام الكلمة التي لها نفس الصوت:

1 van
vegetables
foot

2 face
fan
van

3 fish
van
foot

Activity 4 Look, read, and complete the sentences: انظر، اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل:

1. We have a TV in the ....
2. There are some vegetables in the ....
3. They eat .... for lunch.
4. I have a .... and two hands.

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada.
It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.
It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.
In Hurghada, there's a **beach** ——→ bold text
and there are lots of interesting things to do.
There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists
go on safaris. We have **Sahl Hasheesh**
in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful
houses and interesting **bazaars**.

مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش في مدينة تُسمَّى الغردقة. تقع في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش هنا تقريبًا 190,000 شخص. يوجد شاطئ في الغردقة وهناك الكثير من الأشياء الشيِّقة للقيام بها. هناك الصحراء الكبرى؛ حيث يذهب الكثير من السياح في رحلات سفاري. لدينا سهل حشيش في جنوب الغردقة. يحتوي على بعض المنازل الجميلة والبازارات الشيِّقة.

Read and notice the following tips: اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a short article about a village or a city
نصائح لكتابة مقال قصير عن قرية أو مدينة ما

- Do research and complete the following table: قم بالبحث وأكمل الجدول الآتي:

Ex:

City/Village	Hurghada
Where is it?	In the east of Egypt on the Red Sea
How many people live there?	About 190,000 people.
Interesting things in the city/ village	a beach/the Sahara Desert/bazaars/ Sahl Hasheesh

- Write interesting facts. اكتب حقائق شيِّقة.
- Make your text interesting by adding a map, a diagram, photos, and drawings. اجعل النص الخاص بك شيقًا بإضافة خريطة، مخطَّط بياني، صور، ورسومات.
- Use bold text for important words. استخدم النصَّ الغامق للكلمات المهمة.

Lesson 4 Activities

Activity 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوِّن جُملًا:

1. live - a city – I – called – in – Hurghada.
....
2. on – tourists – go – Lots – safaris. – of
....

Activity 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- it's in the east of egypt.
....

Lesson 4 Homework

Activity Write a short article about your city اكتبْ مقالًا قصيرًا عن مدينتك

Lesson 5 Project

You will learn

how to research and make a poster.

ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية القيام ببحث وصُنع ملصق.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

worker	عامل	food	طعام	something	شيء ما

Adjectives الصفات

fresh	طازج	kind	طيب	happy	سعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		**Past** ماضي	**Present** مضارع		**Past** ماضي
work	يعمل	worked	see	يرى	saw
check	يفحص	checked	buy	يشتري	bought
help	يساعد	helped	find	يجد	found

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

every week	كل أسبوع	near my house	قريب من منزلي

The people who help us: the supermarket worker

الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا: عامل السوبر ماركت

This is Mona. She works at the **supermarket** near my house. My family and I see her **every week** when we buy food.

هذه مُنى. إنها تعمل في سوبر ماركت قريبًا من منزلي. أنا وعائلتي نراها كل أسبوع عندما نشتري طعامًا.

Mona checks the food is fresh. She **helps** us when we can't find something. She is very **kind** and **happy**.

مُنى تفحص الطعام للتأكُّد من أنه طازج. هي تساعدنا عندما لا نستطيع إيجاد شيء ما. إنها طيبة جدًّا وسعيدة.

Read and notice the following tips: اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for making a poster
نصائح لعمل ملصق

- Make sure you have these items in your poster: تأكد من وجود هذه العناصر في ملصقك:
  - – Photo/s or drawing/s صورة / صور أو رسمة / رسومات
  - – Headings عناوين رئيسية
    Ex: The people who help us: the supermarket worker
  - – Map or diagram خريطة أو مخطَّط بياني
  - – Bold text for important words نص غامق للكلمات المهمة
    Ex: She works at the **supermarket** near my house.

Lesson 5 Activities

Activity 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

kind – supermarket – helps – food – finds

This is my friend Malak. She works at a (1) .... It's near my house. When my family and I buy (2) ...., we see her. Malak is very (3) .... and happy. She checks the food is fresh. She also (4) .... us when we can't find something.

Activity 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- mona works at the supermarket near my house

....

Lesson 5 Homework

Activity Make a poster about another job اصنع ملصقًا عن وظيفة أخرى

Unit 4 Review

Vocabulary

apartment

houseboat

house

tent

Phonics

f /f/

fan
face
fish
foot

v /v/

living room
van
vegetables

Language

Prepositions of place

- We use prepositions of place to say where something is. They are:

above	behind	between	in
in front of	next to	on	under

Ex: – The couch is in the living room.

- Asking and answering about places:

Where is the + **place**? → Place + **preposition of place** + place.

Ex: – **A:** Where is the **shopping mall**?
B: The shopping mall is **next to** the supermarket.

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 At home

- Mom and Talia moved to a new apartment.

الأمُّ وتاليا انتقلا إلى شقة جديدة.

- Talia's favorite room is the bedroom, where she can relax and do her homework.

غرفة تاليا المفضَّلة هي غرفة النوم؛ حيث يمكنها الاسترخاء وأداء واجبها المدرسي.

- Mom's favorite room is the living room with a balcony, where she can see the whole street.

غرفة الأمِّ المفضَّلة هي غرفة المعيشة التي بها الشرفة؛ حيث يمكنها رؤية الشارع بأكمله.

- Talia helps her mom to organize the kitchen.

تاليا تساعد والدتها في تنظيم المطبخ.

Lesson 3 Living on a boat

- Sherif and his parents live on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats.

شريف ووالداه يعيشون على متن قارب في فصل الصيف. يعمل والداه على قوارب سياحية.

- They travel up and down the Nile. Sherif likes the summer very much.

هم يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا في النيل. شريف يحب الصيف حبًّا شديدًا.

- From the boat, he sees many interesting places and meets people from all over the world.

من القارب، يرى الكثير من الأماكن الشيِّقة ويقابل أشخاصًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.

- He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

هو يتحدَّث اللغة الإنجليزية واللغة الصينية مع السياح.

- One day, Sherif saw a small child falling into the river.

في أحد الأيام، رأى شريف طفلًا صغيرًا يسقط في النهر.

- Sherif's dad jumped into the river and saved the child.

قفز والد شريف في النهر وأنقذ الطفل.

- Sherif was very happy and decided to learn to swim.

كان شريف سعيدًا جدًّا وقرَّر تعلُّم السباحة.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

balcony	شرفة/بلكونة	cloth	قماش	boat	قارب
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	post office	مكتب البريد	school	مدرسة
shopping mall	مركز تجاري	office	مكتب	hospital	مستشفى
summer	فصل الصيف	street	شارع	child	طفل
people	أشخاص/ناس	bazaars	بازارات	tourists	سياح

Adjectives الصفات

lovely	جميل/رائع	beautiful	جميل	small	صغير
fantastic	رائع	happy	سعيد	interesting	شيِّق
fresh	طازج	kind	طيب	favorite	مُفضَّل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
check	يفحص	checked	meet	يقابل	met
save	ينقذ	saved	speak	يتحدث	spoke
shout	يصرخ	shouted	can	يستطيع	could
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	go	يذهب	went
organize	ينظِّم	organized	swim	يسبح	swam
jump	يقفز	jumped	buy	يشتري	bought
decide	يقرِّر	decided	see	يرى	saw
stop	يقف	stopped	say	يقول	said
help	يساعد	helped	do	يفعل	did

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

go on safaris	يذهب في رحلات سفاري	For me ...	بالنسبة لي ...
let's do it!	هيَّا نفعل ذلك!	One day, ...	في أحد الأيام، ...

Dictation

Lesson (1)

منزل عائم	....	خيمة	....
منزل	....	شقة	....
مطبخ	....	غرفة نوم	....
مبنى	....	غرفة معيشة	....
قماش	....	الشرفة/البلكونة	....
شارع	....	جميل/رائع	....

Lesson (2)

أمام	....	على	....
أعلى	....	في	....
بين	....	خلف	....
بجوار	....	أسفل	....
مكتب البريد	....	مدرسة	....
مستشفى	....	سوبر ماركت	....
مركز تجاري	....	مكتب	....

Lesson (3)

توجَّه مباشرة إلى الأمام.	....	انعطف يسارًا.	....
إنه على الناصية.	....	انعطف يمينًا.	....
اسلُك اليمين الثاني.	....	قارب	....
سياح	....	اللغة الصينية	....
مروحة	....	قدم	....
وجه	....	خضراوات	....
سمكة	....	شاحنة	....

Lesson (4)

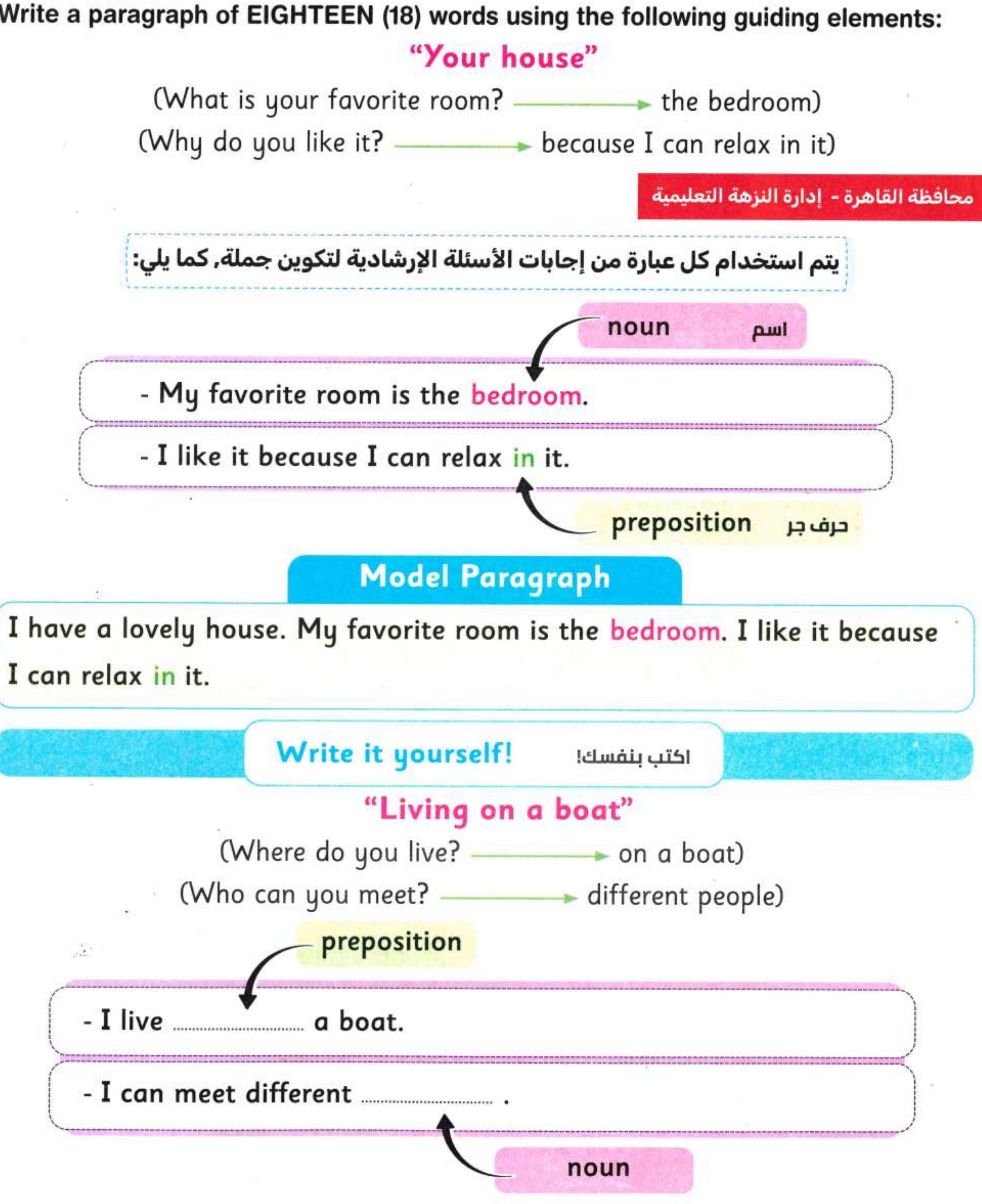
بازارات	....	شاطئ	....
الغردقة	....	شيِّق	....

Lesson (5)

طازج	....	طيب	....

Present	Past	Present	Past
relax	relaxed	call	....
see	saw	jump	....
help	....	save	....
organize	....	decide	....
find	....	learn	....
can	....	speak	....
do	....	stop	....
go	....	swim	....
has/have	....	meet	....
live	....	say	....
work	....	is	....
shout	....	are	....
check	....	buy	....

حلّها صح



هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your house"

(What is your favorite room? ⟶ the bedroom)

(Why do you like it? ⟶ because I can relax in it)

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة النزهة التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل عبارة من إجابات الأسئلة الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:

noun اسم

- My favorite room is the bedroom.
- I like it because I can relax in it.

preposition حرف جر

Model Paragraph

I have a lovely house. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like it because I can relax in it.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Living on a boat"

(Where do you live? ⟶ on a boat)

(Who can you meet? ⟶ different people)

preposition

- I live .... a boat.
- I can meet different ....

noun

....

....

....

Important Paragraphs

My favorite room

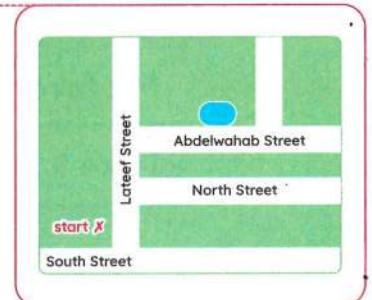
bedroom – quietly

My favorite room in our new apartment is my **bedroom**. I can relax and do my homework **quietly**.

Directions to my house

corner – left

From the **corner** of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Turn right on Abdelwahab Street. It's on your **left**.



The supermarket in my town

supermarket – help

In my town, There's a **supermarket** where we buy food. The supermarket worker **helps** us find things.

Hurghada

east – Sahara Desert

Hurghada is in the **east** of Egypt. There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists go on safaris.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

1 Look and match: انظر وصِل:

1. kitchen [c]
2. bedroom [ ]
3. bathroom [ ]
4. living room [ ]
5. dining room [ ]
6. balcony [ ]

a b c

d e f

2 Look and complete the sentences: انظر وأكمل الجُمل:

1. The tent is ...next to... the car.

2. There's a plant .... the couch.

3. The pink house is .... the red house and the yellow house.

4. There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصِل:

1 where we buy food	a post office
2 where we send letters	b supermarket
3 where I learn	c shopping mall
4 where I buy clothes and shoes	d school

Test 1 on unit (4)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam lives in a .... called Hurghada.
   a. village b. town c. city d. oasis
2. Hurghada is in the east of ....
   a. Aswan b. Egypt c. Giza d. Damietta
3. The .... can go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.
   a. farmers b. plumbers c. tourists d. electricians
4. We can buy beautiful things at the ....
   a. schools b. bazaars c. gardens d. deserts

(محافظة الفيوم - إدارة أبشواي التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in the desert usually live in ....
   a. apartments b. tents c. houseboats d. houses

(محافظة الغربية - إدارة بسيون التعليمية)

2. .... right. The park is on the left.
   a. Turn b. Take c. Talk d. Learn

(محافظة بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف التعليمية)

3. I like sitting on the .... to see the whole street.
   a. kitchen b. bathroom c. dining room d. balcony

(محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية)

4. The .... is a place where we send letters.
   a. post office b. office c. school d. hospital

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ههيا التعليمية)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ahead – take – between – Go – corner

Here are some directions to reach my house. From the (1) .... of South Street with Lateef Street, (2) .... the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight (3) .... Turn left at the supermarket. My house is (4) .... the supermarket and the school.

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الساحل التعليمية)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My friend Amr lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists. One day, Amr saw some children swimming. A child **shouted** for help, so Amr jumped into the water to save him.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amr lives on a .... in the summer.
   a. boat b. tent c. houseboat d. house
2. The underlined word "**shouted**" means to speak ....
   a. loudly b. slowly c. quietly d. happily

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where do Amr's parents work?

....

4. How did Amr save the child?

....

(محافظة الفيوم - إدارة سنورس التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The shopping mall is in front .... (in) the office.

(محافظة الأقصر - إدارة البياضية التعليمية)

2. Excuse me, ... (when) is the post office?

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة النزهة التعليمية)

3. The house is .... (under) the bank and the supermarket.

(محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس التعليمية)

4. My house is .... (behind) to the school.

(محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية)

6 Punctuate the following:

– i live in a city called hurghada. (محافظة المنوفية - إدارة تلا التعليمية)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"My apartment"

(favorite room – street)

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (4)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Play Audio

1. We have a new .... in our town.
   a. post office b. restaurant c. school d. shopping mall
2. To go to the shopping mall, take the .... right on North Street.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth
3. The shopping mall is .... the hospital.
   a. behind b. above c. next to d. in front of
4. My parents work at the ....
   a. office b. hospital c. shopping mall d. bank

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you help me .... the kitchen?
   a. turn b. relax c. organize d. cook
2. The .... is made of cloth.
   a. tent b. apartment c. house d. houseboat
3. I went to the .... with my mom to buy food.
   a. school b. supermarket c. office d. hospital
4. Noha lives on a/an .... She likes living on water.
   a. apartment b. tent c. house d. houseboat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

food – fresh – kind – helps – worker

There's a supermarket near my house. This is where my family and I buy (1) .... every week. In the supermarket, there is a supermarket (2) .... called Mona. She checks the food is (3) .... and (4) .... us when we can't find something.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Nader. I moved to a new house with my family. It's **fantastic**. There is a big living room with a balcony, a bathroom, and a kitchen. There are also three bedrooms. There is a garden where I like to play with my brothers. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony because I can see the whole street. I like our new house. It's big and lovely.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about the ....
   a. small family b. garden c. new house d. balcony
2. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means ....
   a. ugly b. beautiful c. tall d. colorful

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Which is Nader's favorite room?

....

4. How many bedrooms are there in the house?

....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The dog is jumping .... (under) the box.
2. Fish swim .... (on) the water.
3. My brother's bed is .... (in front) to my bed.
4. Ola is standing .... (in) a tall girl and a short girl.

6 Punctuate the following:

– my favorite room is the living room

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Different places in a town"

(supermarket – office)

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...

- listen, read, and write about workers in my community.
- learn about electricity.
- practice using *this, that, these, those*.
- practice word stress.
- think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- make a report about workers in my community.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أستمع، أقرأ وأكتب عن العمال في مجتمعي.
- أتعلم عن الكهرباء.
- أتدرب على استخدام *this, that, these, those*.
- أتدرب على تشديد الكلمة.
- أفكِّر وأكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
- أعدُّ تقريرًا عن العُمَّال في مجتمعي.

Did you know?

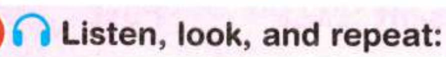
- A broken faucet dripping once per second can waste more than 13,000 liters of water in a year.

هل كنت تعلم؟

- يمكن أن تُهدر حنفية مكسورة تقطر مرة واحدة في الثانية أكثر من 13,000 لتر من الماء سنويًّا.

Lesson 1 I love my job

You will learn
vocabulary about jobs.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلَّق بالوظائف.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية

garbage collector
جامع القمامة

plumber
سبَّاك

mechanic
ميكانيكي

mail carrier
ساعي البريد

electrician
كهربائي

bus driver
سائق أتوبيس

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

faucets	حنفيات	driving	قيادة	pipes	مواسير
parcel	طرد	job	وظيفة/عمل	trash	قمامة

Adjectives الصفات

wet	مُبلل/رطب	messy	فوضوي	young	صغير في السن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	**Past ماضي**	**Present مضارع**	**Past ماضي**
like يحب	liked	make يصنع/يَعدُّ	made
fix يصلّح	fixed	forget ينسى	forgot
hope يأمل/يتمنى	hoped	do يقوم	did
wait ينتظر	waited	has يتناول/يمتلك	had

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

take out ... يُخرِج ...	much better at ... أفضل كثيرًا في ...
want to ... يريد أن ...	have to ... يجب أن ...
What about ...? ماذا عن ...؟	what happened? ماذا حدث؟

(Conversation) main points النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Zeinab asks her dad if he likes his job.
  زينب تسأل والدها إذا كان يحب وظيفته.
- Zeinab's dad loves being a plumber.
  والد زينب يحب كونه سبّاكًا.
- When Dad was young, he wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic, but he was much better at fixing pipes and faucets.
  عندما كان الوالد صغيرًا في السن، أراد أن يكون سائق أتوبيس أو ميكانيكيًّا، لكنه كان أفضل كثيرًا في إصلاح المواسير والحنفيات.
- Youssef likes his job as an electrician. He loves making things work.
  يوسف يحب عمله ككهربائي. فهو يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.
- Dad hopes the mail carrier has his parcel.
  يأمل الوالد أن يكون مع ساعي البريد الطرد الخاص به.
- Zeinab forgot to take out the trash for the garbage collector.
  نسيت زينب إخراج القمامة لجامع القمامة.

Conversation

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

1. Dad, do you like your job? أبي، هل تحب عملك؟

2. Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and **messy** because I have to fix **pipes** and faucets.
   نعم، أحب كوني سبّاكًا. أحيانًا يكون الأمر مبللًا وفوضويًّا لأنه يجب عليّ أن أصلّح المواسير والحنفيات.

3. Did you want to do a different job when you were young?
   هل أردت القيام بعمل مختلف عندما كنتَ صغيرًا في السن؟

4. Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.
   نعم، أردت أن أكون سائق أتوبيس أو ميكانيكيًّا.

5. So what happened? إذن ماذا حدث؟

6. Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!
   حسنًا، أنا حقًّا لا أحب القيادة! كنت أفضل كثيرًا في إصلاح المواسير والحنفيات من السيارات!

7. What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?
   وماذا عنك، يا يوسف؟ هل تحب كونك كهربائيًّا؟

8. Yes, I love making things work! نعم، فأنا أحب أن أجعل الأشياء تعمل!

9. Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my **parcel**...
   أوه انظروا، ها هو ساعي البريد! أتمنّى أن يكون معه الطرد الخاصّ بيّ...

10. And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please...
    وها هو جامع القمامة! أوه، لقد نسيت أن أُخرِج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك...

Conversation Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sometimes fixing pipes and faucets is ....
   a. different b. dry c. messy d. young
2. When Dad was young, he wanted to be a/an ....
   a. mechanic b. bus driver c. garbage collector d. electrician
3. Dad doesn't really like .... !
   a. driving b. collecting c. fixing d. working
4. Dad was much better at fixing .... and faucets than cars.
   a. bikes b. parcels c. buses d. pipes

Activity 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

young – messy – bus driver – faucets – plumber

Zeinab : Dad, do you like your job?

Dad : Yes, I love being a (1).................... . Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and (2).................... .

Zeinab : Did you want to do a different job when you were (3).................... ?

Dad : Yes, I wanted to be a (4).................... or a mechanic.

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. hope – has – I – my – parcel. – he
   ....
2. you – electrician? – being – Do – like – an
   ....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- dad, do you like your job
  ....

Lesson 1 Activities

Activity 1 Look and fill in the missing letters:

انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. e – e – trician
2. m – cha – ic
3. m – il ca – rier
4. p – um – er

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Dad loves being a .... He drives a bus.
   a. bus driver b. plumber c. mechanic d. mail carrier
2. The garbage collector collects the ....
   a. parcels b. trash c. faucet d. car
3. Youssef is a/an .... He loves making things work.
   a. plumber b. garbage collector
   c. mail carrier d. electrician
4. I hope the mail carrier has my ....
   a. pipe b. car c. parcel d. trash

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

faucets – driving – fixing – plumber – mechanic

My dad works as a bus driver. He drives a bus to many different places and helps lots of people. He really likes (1).................... ! My brother is a (2).................... . He fixes cars. When he was young, he wanted to be a (3).................... , but he wasn't good at fixing pipes and (4).................... .

Lesson 1 Homework

Activity 1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

Activity 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1 My dad is a mechanic.	☐	a He fixes pipes and faucets.
2 Here's the mail carrier.	☐	b make things work.
3 He is a plumber.	☐	c He fixes cars.
4 The electrician can ...	☐	d He has our parcels.
	☐	e when you were young?

Activity 3 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1 We need a <u>bus driver</u> if we want to fix pipes or faucets. (..............................)

2 A <u>garbage collector</u> fixes my dad's car. (..............................)

3 A bus driver drives a <u>faucet</u> to many different places. (..............................)

4 Jana took out the trash for the <u>electrician</u>. (..............................)

Activity 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"Your dad's job"

(plumber – fix)

....

....

Lesson 2 (A) Is it near or far?

You will learn

to practice using "this, that, these, those."

ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: التدرُّب على استخدام "this, that, these, those".

Play video

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Language Focus

Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

- We use "this, that, these, those" to say how close an object is to the speaker.
- نستخدم "this, that, these, those" للإخبار عن مدى قرب شيء ما من المتحدِّث.

Singular noun/Uncountable noun
اسم مفرد/اسم لا يُعد

Near قريب	Far بعيد
This هذا/هذه	That ذلك/تلك

Ex: – This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

Ex: – That's the water dripping from the faucet.

Plural noun
اسم جمع

Near قريب	Far بعيد
These هذه/هؤلاء	Those تلك/أولئك

Ex: – These are the plumber's tools.

Ex: – Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

Lesson 2A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can you see? .... the bus driver.
   a. That's b. These are c. They are d. Those are
2. .... are the faucets in my bathroom.
   a. It b. These c. This d. That
3. .... is the mechanic who fixed my car.
   a. These b. Those c. This d. They
4. Those are the .... who carried our parcels.
   a. mechanic b. plumber
   c. bus driver d. mail carriers

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. This .... (are) the garbage collector who collects the trash.
2. These .... (mechanic) work in the repair shop.
3. Those drivers .... (is) driving the new buses.
4. .... (These) is my aunt. Her name is Amira.

repair shop ورشة إصلاح

Activity 3 Look and make sentences using the given words and (This – That – These – Those): انظر وكوّن جُملًا مستخدمًا الكلمات المعطاة و(This – That – These – Those):

1. mail carrier — near
   This is a mail carrier.
2. faucet — far
   ....
3. my blue pens — far
   ....
4. his books — near
   ....

Lesson 2 (B) Electricity

You will learn some facts about electricity.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: بعض الحقائق التي تتعلَّق بالكهرباء.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

electricity	الكهرباء	speed	سرعة	light	ضوء
lightning	البرق	fast	بسرعة	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
plugs	قوابس/فيش	storm	عاصفة	socket	مقبس
hands	أيادٍ	safely	بشكل آمن	flash	وميض
energy	طاقة	amount	كمية	bodies	أجسام

Adjectives الصفات

electrical	كهربائي	huge	ضخم	dangerous	خطير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
practice	يتدرب	practiced
travel	يسافر/ينتقل	traveled
control	يتحكم	controlled
burn	يحرق	burned
use	يستخدم	used
touch	يلمس	touched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
become	يصبح	became
tell	يخبر	told
see	يرى	saw
get	يحصل على	got
put	يضع	put

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

knows how to ...	يعرف كيف ...	work ... with	يعمل ... مع
close to ...	قريب من ...	for three years	لمدة ثلاث سنوات

Amira the electrician أميرة الكهربائية

This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and **practiced** for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.

هذه أميرة، إنها كهربائية. لقد درست وتدربت لمدة ثلاث سنوات قبل أن تصبح كهربائية. إنها تعرف كيف تعمل مع الكهرباء بشكل آمن.

Interviewer: Tell us something interesting about electricity.

أخبرنا بشيء شيّق عن الكهرباء.

Amira: Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a **storm** we sometimes see a flash of **lightning**. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm!

هل كنتم تعلمون، أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة كبيرة، تقارب سرعة الضوء. في العاصفة نرى أحيانًا وميضًا من البرق. توجد كمية كبيرة من الطاقة في العاصفة الكهربائية!

Interviewer: Is electricity dangerous? هل الكهرباء خطيرة؟

Amira: Yes, very dangerous. If we get an **electric shock**, we can't control our bodies. It can also **burn** us.

نعم، خطيرة جدًا. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربائية، فلن نتمكن من التحكم في أجسامنا. ويمكنها كذلك أن تصيبنا بالحروق.

Interviewer: How can we use electricity safely?

كيف نستطيع استخدام الكهرباء بشكل آمن؟

Amira: Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a **socket**, only use **plugs**.

لا تلمس أبدًا أي شيء كهربائي بيد مبللة. لا تضع شيئًا في المقبس، فقط استخدم القوابس.

Lesson 2B Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Amira is a/an .... She works safely with electricity.
   a. teacher b. electrician c. plumber d. doctor
2. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of ....
   a. light b. sound c. storm d. lightning
3. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a. big b. dry c. hurt d. wet
4. Never put anything into a ...., only use plugs.
   a. pipe b. faucet c. socket d. parcel

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

burn – practiced – storm – travels – electric

This is Amira. She's an electrician. She studied and (1).................... for three years before being an electrician. She says that electricity (2).................... very fast. She says that if we get an (3).................... shock, we can't control our bodies. Electricity can also (4).................... us.

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. What can we sometimes see in a storm?
....
2. How can we use electricity safely?
....
3. What happens if we get an electric shock?
....
4. How long did Amira study and practice to be an electrician?
....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 Read and complete with (This - That - These - Those):
اقرأ وأكمل مستخدمًا (This - That - These - Those):

1. .... is the socket the electrician is fixing. (near)
2. .... mail carrier is tall. (far)
3. .... children are playing video games. (far)
4. .... are the cars the mechanic fixed. (near)

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. Sometimes, we can see a flash of lightning in a storm. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm! Electricity is very dangerous. It can give us an electric shock, and then we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. So, we must use electricity safely. We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands or put anything into a socket.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We must use electricity ....
   a. sadly b. happily c. safely d. slowly
2. If we get an electric shock, we can't .... our bodies.
   a. control b. study c. practice d. become

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

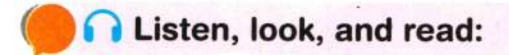
3. How fast does electricity travel?
....
4. What is there in an electrical storm?
....

Activity 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- how can we use electricity safely
....

Lesson 3 (A) Three cousins

You will learn to read a story about three cousins.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة عن ثلاثة أولاد عمٍّ.



Listen, look, and read: استمع، انظر واقرأ:

screwdriver مفك

tape measure شريط قياس

blocks مكعبات

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

cousins	أولاد عمٍّ	child	طفل	radios	أجهزة الراديو
cell phones	الهواتف المحمولة	safety	السلامة/الأمان	adults	راشدون/بالغون

Adjectives الصفات

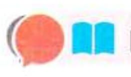
curious	فضولي	older	أكبر سنًّا	patient	صبور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
carry	يحمل	carried	can	يستطيع	could
explain	يشرح	explained	put	يضع	put
call	يتصل/ينادي	called	make	يعمل/يصنع	made
experiment	يُجرِّب	experimented			

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

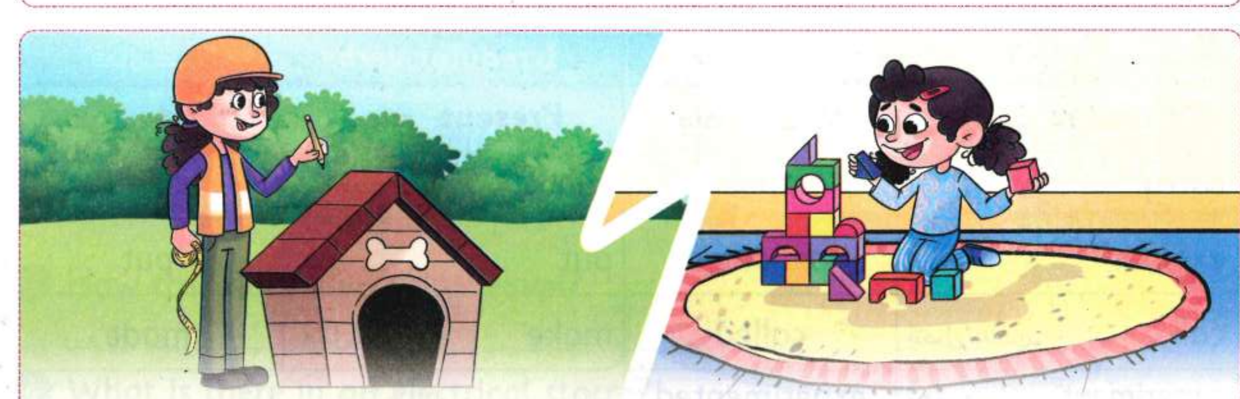
on top of ...	فوق ...	get angry	يغضب
learn about ...	يتعلم عن ...	all the time	طوال الوقت



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different. When Lara was a child, she loved to **experiment**. She was very **curious**. She always carried a **screwdriver** and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was *How does it work?* She learned about safety with electricity.

لارا، تاليا، وأمير أبناء عمٍّ، لكنهم جميعًا مختلفون جدًّا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب القيام بالتجارب. وكانت فضولية جدًّا. كانت دائمًا تحمل مفكًّا وكانت تفتح أجهزة الراديو، والهواتف المحمولة القديمة وأي شيء يعمل بالكهرباء. كان سؤالها المفضَّل: كيف يعمل؟ تعلَّمت عن السلامة مع الكهرباء.



When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure** and a pencil.

عندما كانت تاليا طفلة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع مكعبًا واحدًا فوق الآخر. وعندما كبرت، بدأت في صنع الأشياء. لقد صنعت منزلاً صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا لدمية أختها. كانت دائمًا تحمل شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

Amir was always very **patient** and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all **adults,** but they still call each other when they need some help.

دائمًا ما كان أمير صبورًا جدًّا وكان يحب مساعدة الناس. أحيانًا، يغضب الإخوة الكبار من إخوانهم الصغار، لكن أمير لم يغضب أبدًا. وكان يلعب، ويساعد، ويشرح الأشياء طوال الوقت. واليوم ، لارا، تاليا، وأمير جميعهم بالغون لكنهم ما زالوا يتصلون ببعضهم بعضًا متى يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (✗): اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

1. When Lara was a child, she loved to help people. (   )
2. Talia always carried a tape measure and a pencil. (   )
3. Amir was always curious. (   )
4. Lara's favorite question was *How does it work?* (   )
5. Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all children. (   )

Answers: 1. (✗) 2. (✓) 3. (✗) 4. (✓) 5. (✗)

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Amir was always .... and liked helping people.
   a. sad b. angry c. patient d. thirsty
2. Lara learned about safety with ....
   a. buildings b. electricity c. cars d. medicine
3. Lara was very .... She loved to experiment.
   a. hungry b. tired c. angry d. curious
4. When Talia was a baby, she played with ....
   a. blocks b. screwdrivers
   c. radios d. cell phones

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

teacher – tape measure – electrician – blocks – screwdriver

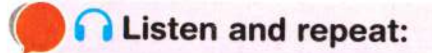
When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She always carried a (1) .... and she opened anything that had electricity. She wants to be an (2) .... When Talia was a baby, she played with (3) .... She always carried a (4) .... and a pencil. She wants to be an architect.

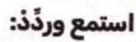
architect مهندس معماري

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. What did Lara learn about?
   ....
2. What did Talia make?
   ....
3. How was Amir patient?
   ....

You will learn about syllables and word stress.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: عن المقاطع الصوتية والتشديد على الكلمة.





Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

- A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
- المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من كلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين صوتيين

Word	Syllables
teacher	teach-er

Word	Syllables
dentist	den-tist

Word	Syllables
plumber	plumb-er

Word	Syllables
doctor	doc-tor

Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية

Word	Syllables
architect	ar-chi-tect

Word	Syllables
mechanic	me-chan-ic

Word	Syllables
collector	col-lec-tor

Four-syllable word كلمة ذات أربعة مقاطع صوتية

Word	Syllables
electrician	e-lec-tri-cian

Word Stress التشديد في الكلمة

- A stressed syllable is the strongest syllable in a word. We say it louder and longer.

المقطع المشدَّد هو أقوى مقطع صوتي في الكلمة، حيث ننطق هذا المقطع الصوتي بصوت أعلى ولمدة أطول.

تشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها، والذي تحته خط، مشدد (stressed).
وتشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها غير مشدد (unstressed).

1. When a noun has two syllables, the stress is usually on the first syllable.

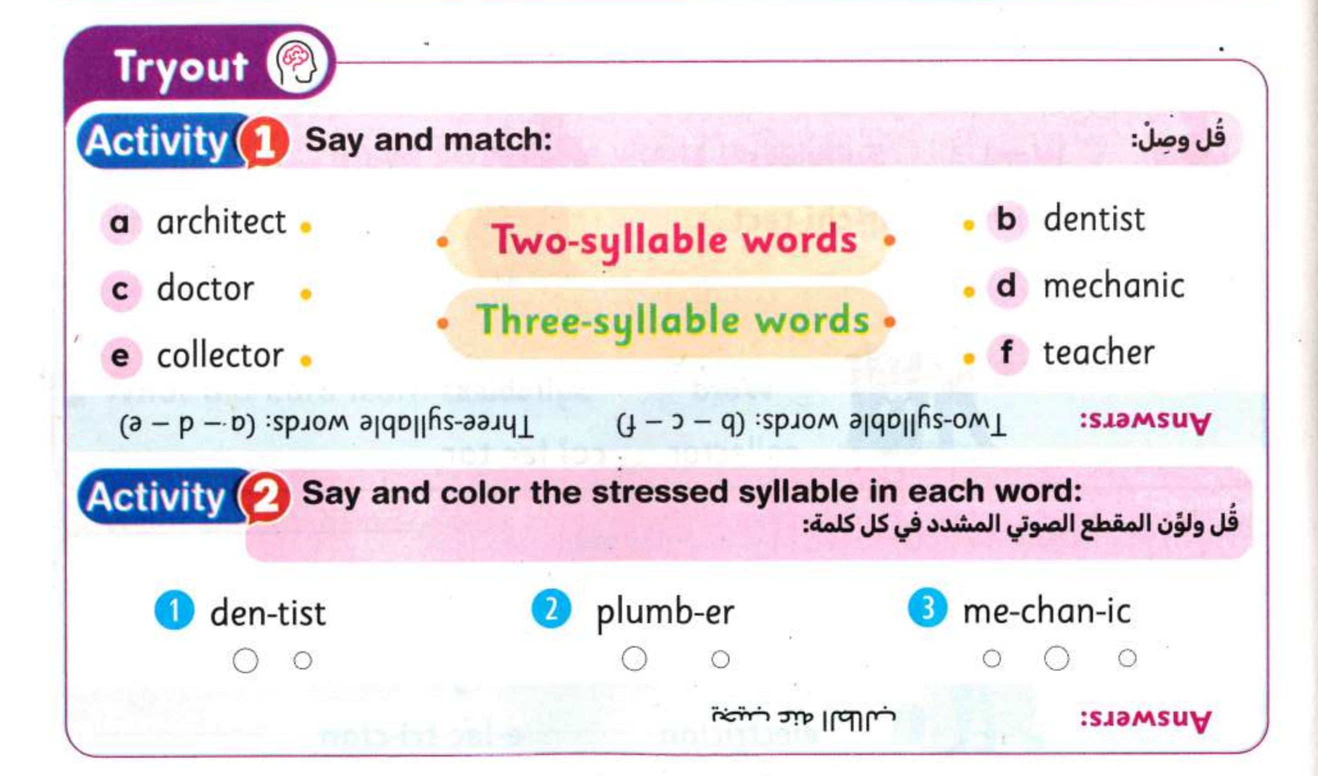
عندما يكون الاسم مكونًا من مقطعين صوتيين، يكون التشديد عادة على المقطع الأول.

Ex: **den**-tist, **plumb**-er, **teach**-er, **driv**-er, **doc**-tor

2. When a noun has three syllables, the stress is usually on the second syllable.

عندما يكون الاسم مكوَّنًا من ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية، يكون التشديد عادة على المقطع الثاني.

Ex: me-**chan**-ic, col-**lec**-tor



Tryout

Activity 1 Say and match: قُل وصِل:

a architect	Two-syllable words	b dentist
c doctor	Three-syllable words	d mechanic
e collector		f teacher

Answers: Two-syllable words: (b – c – f) Three-syllable words: (a – d – e)

Activity 2 Say and color the stressed syllable in each word:
قُل ولوِّن المقطع الصوتي المشدد في كل كلمة:

1. den-tist ○ ○
2. plumb-er ○ ○
3. me-chan-ic ○ ○ ○

Answers:

Lesson 3B Activities

Activity 1 Say and circle the correct number of syllables:
قُل وضع دائرة حول عدد المقاطع الصوتية الصحيحة:

a plumber
- 2 syllables
- 3 syllables

b electrician
- 3 syllables
- 4 syllables

c architect
- 2 syllables
- 3 syllables

d dentist
- 2 syllables
- 3 syllables

Activity 2 Listen and circle the word with the different number of syllables out: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات عدد المقاطع الصوتية المختلفة:

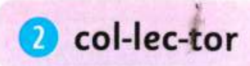
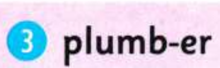
1. dentist – collector – doctor – teacher
2. collector – architect – plumber – mechanic
3. electrician – mechanic – architect – collector

Activity 3 Say, sort, and write: قُل، صنِّف واكتب:

teacher – mechanic – doctor – collector

The stress on the first syllable	The stress on the second syllable
....	....
....	....

Activity 4 Say and underline the stressed syllable:
قُل وضع خطًّا تحت المقطع الصوتي المشدد:

1. den-tist
2. col-lec-tor 
3. plumb-er 
4. me-chan-ic

C CLIL: Math

You will learn
to solve problems using division.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: حل المسائل الكلامية باستخدام عملية القسمة.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Dividing numbers تقسيم الأعداد

100 ÷ 50 = 2 ⟶ 100 ÷ 2 = 50   100 ÷ 25 = 4 ⟶ 100 ÷ 4 = 25

100 ÷ 20 = 5 ⟶ 100 ÷ 5 = 20

Solving the problems using division حل المسائل الكلامية باستخدام القسمة

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children.
How many buses do they need?
يوجد مائتا طفل في الصف الرابع الابتدائي. في طريقهم اليوم في رحلة مدرسية. كل أتوبيس مدرسة يحمل 50 طفلًا. كم عدد الأتوبيسات التي يحتاجونها؟

Total number of children
↓
200 ÷ 50 = 4 ← Number of buses needed
↓
Number of children on each bus

Tryout

Read and match: اقرأ وصِل:

1. 100 ÷ 2 = •   • a 20
2. 100 ÷ 4 = •   • b 50
3. 100 ÷ 5 = •   • c 25

Answers: 1. b 2. c 3. a

Activity 1 Put (✓) or (✗): ضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

a 100 ÷ 50 = 2 (   )   b 100 ÷ 2 = 50 (   )
c 100 ÷ 4 = 50 (   )   d 100 ÷ 5 = 20 (   )
e 100 ÷ 20 = 4 (   )   f 100 ÷ 25 = 4 (   )

Activity 2 Look and choose the correct answer: انظر واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. 100 ÷ .... = 4   a 25   b 50
2. 100 ÷ 50 = ...   a 5   b 2
3. 100 ÷ 20 = ...   a 5   b 10
4. 100 ÷ 25 = ...   a 2   b 4

Activity 3 Read and solve the problems: اقرأ وحُلّ المسائل:

a We want to divide 300 balls equally into 50 boxes. How many balls will be in each box?

300 ÷ 50 = ⟶ 30 ÷ 5 = ... ⟶ 300 ÷ 50 = ...

b We want to divide 200 blocks equally among 50 boys. How many blocks will each boy take?

....

....

c Mrs Mona bought 100 balloons for the school party. There are 50 girls coming to this party. How many balloons will each girl have equally?

....

....

Lesson 3 Homework

Activity 1 Say and circle: قُل وضع دائرة:

The words with two syllables		The words with three syllables	
teacher	dentist	plumber	doctor
electrician		mechanic	
collector	doctor	architect	dentist

Activity 2 Say and check (✓) the word that has the same stressed syllable:
قُل وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمة التي لها نفس المقطع الصوتي المشدد:

1 driver	2 collector	3 plumber
doctor	teacher	mechanic
mechanic	architect	dentist

Activity 3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins. When they were young, they liked to do different things. Lara always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Amir was never angry at his little brother. He always helped him. Talia played with blocks. She made a little house for her dog. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When Lara was young, she always carried a ....
   a. screwdriver b. tape measure c. book d. pencil
2. Amir was always very .... and he liked helping people.
   a. lazy b. fast c. angry d. patient

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. What did Talia play with?

....

4. What did Lara open when she was young?

....

Lesson 4 Writing

You will learn
to write about the pros and cons of a job.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: الكتابة عن مميزات وعيوب وظيفة ما.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

pros	مميزات	cons	عيوب	outside	بالخارج
mail bag	حقيبة البريد	points	نقاط	weather	الطقس
exercise	تمرين	early	مبكرًا	everybody/everyone	الجميع

Adjectives الصفات

easy	سهل	heavy	ثقيل	great	رائع
good	جيد	bad	سيئ	different	مختلف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
talk	يتكلم	talked	tell	يخبر	told
walk	يمشي	walked	get	يحصل على	got
start	يبدأ	started	meet	يقابل	met

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

On the one hand, ...	من ناحية، ...	wake up	يستيقظ
On the other hand, ...	من ناحية أخرى، ...	think about ...	يفكر في ...
all day	طوال اليوم	in the morning	صباحًا

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the **pros** and **cons**.

اسمي شريفة. سنتحدث في الفصل هذا الأسبوع عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة. عمتي ساعية بريد في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. لقد تحدَّثتُ معها عن وظيفتها وقد أخبرتني ببعض المميزات والعيوب.

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier مميزات وعيوب وظيفة ساعي البريد

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job. **On the one hand,** mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكونين ساعية بريد؟

توجد بعض النقاط الجيدة والسيئة عن الوظيفة. فمن ناحية، سُعاة البريد يقضون اليوم كاملًا بالخارج. هذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس لطيفًا، ولكنه ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الطقس شديد الحرارة أو شديد البرودة. سُعاة البريد يمشون طوال اليوم ويحصلون على الكثير من التمرينات. يحب الجميع الحصول على البريد، لذلك يحب الجميع مقابلة ساعي البريد.

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

من ناحية أخرى، يوجد بعض الأشياء السيئة التي يجب التفكير فيها. فوظيفة ساعي البريد ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا. شيء آخر سيِّئ هو الاستيقاظ في وقت مبكر جدًا. تبدأ عمتي العمل في الساعة 6 صباحًا.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier: مميزات وعيوب كونك ساعي بريد:

✓ Pros (Good things) مميزات

- Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good.
  سُعاة البريد يقضون النهار بالخارج. هذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس لطيفًا.
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
  يحصل سُعاة البريد على الكثير من التمرينات.
- Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.
  يحب الجميع الحصول على البريد، لذلك يحب الجميع مقابلة ساعي البريد.

✗ Cons (Bad things) عيوب

- It's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold.
  ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الطقس شديد الحرارة أو شديد البرودة.
- It's not easy. ليست سهلة.
- The mail bag is very heavy. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا.
- Mail carriers wake up very early. يستيقظ سُعاة البريد في وقت مبكر جدًا.

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (✗): اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗):

1. Mail carriers wake up late. ( )
2. Mail carriers get a lot of exercise. ( )
3. Everybody likes meeting the mail carrier. ( )
4. The mail bag isn't very heavy. ( )
5. Mail carriers are outside all day. ( )

Answers: 1. (✗) 2. (✓) 3. (✓) 4. (✗) 5. (✓)

Lesson 4 Activities

Activity 1 **Read and sort the following sentences:** اقرأ وصنّف الجمل الآتية:

1. Mail carriers wake up very early.
2. Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
3. Everybody likes meeting the mail carrier.
4. The mail bag is very heavy.

Pros (Good things)	Cons (Bad things)
....	....
....	....

Activity 2 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

good – exercise – walk – sleep – outside

There are some pros about being a mail carrier. Mail carriers are (1)................ all day. This is great when the weather is (2)................, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers (3)................ all day and get a lot of (4)................ . I like this job.

Activity 3 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what's it like to be a mail carrier

....

Lesson 4 Homework

Activity **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"The pros and cons of a job"
(exercise – heavy)

....

....

Lesson 5 Project

You will learn
how to make a report about workers in the community.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية إعداد تقرير عن العُمّال في المجتمع.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

workers	عُمّال	lights	أضواء	cleaners	عُمّال النظافة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	**Past** ماضي	**Present** مضارع	**Past** ماضي
connect يوصل	connected	bring يُحضر	brought

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

take away ...	يأخذ بعيدًا ...	keep ... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيف

A report about people who help us
تقرير عن الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا

Workers who made our school
العُمّال الذين شيدوا مدرستنا

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.
يوصّل السبّاكون المواسير حتى نحصل على الماء. يوصّل الكهربائيون الكهرباء حتى نتمكن من استخدام الأضواء.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.
يحافظ عُمّال النظافة على نظافة المدرسة. يُحضر سائقو الأتوبيس الأطفال إلى المدرسة. يأخذ جامعوا القمامة القاذورات بعيدًا.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.
يصلّح الميكانيكيون السيارات والأتوبيسات التي تُحضر الأطفال إلى المدرسة.

Read and notice the following tips: اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for making a report
نصائح لإعداد تقرير

- Make a list of people who help you. قم بعمل قائمة بالأشخاص الذين يساعدونك.
- Choose a specific job these people do/a specific place they work in to write about. اختر وظيفة معيَّنة يقوم بها هؤلاء الأشخاص/مكانًا محددًا يعملون فيه للكتابة عنها.
- Write a heading related to these people who help you. اكتب عنوانًا رئيسيًا متعلقًا بهؤلاء الأشخاص الذين يساعدونك.
- Use pictures related to these people. استخدم صورًا متعلقة بهؤلاء الأشخاص.

Lesson 5 Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... connect the pipes.
   a. plumbers b. cleaners c. drivers d. mechanics
2. The electricians connect .... so that we can use lights.
   a. faucets b. buses c. electricity d. pipes
3. The cleaners keep the school ....
   a. near b. dirty c. big d. clean
4. The mechanics .... cars and buses that bring the children to school.
   a. have b. take c. fix d. dive

Activity 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the garbage collectors take away our garbage

....

Lesson 5 Homework

Activity Make a report about people who help you at the hospital
قم بإعداد تقرير عن الأشخاص الذين يساعدونك في المستشفى

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

bus driver

garbage collector

electrician

mechanic

plumber

mail carrier

Phonics

Two-syllable words

Words	Syllables
teacher	teach-er
plumber	plumb-er
dentist	den-tist
doctor	doc-tor

Three-syllable words

Words	Syllables
architect	ar-chi-tect
mechanic	me-chan-ic
collector	col-lec-tor

Four-syllable word

Word	Syllables
electrician	e-lec-tri-cian

Language

Demonstrative pronouns

This — For singular/uncountable near objects
Ex: – This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

That — For singular/uncountable far objects
Ex: – That's the water dripping from the faucet.

These — For plural near objects
Ex: – These are the plumber's tools.

Those — For plural far objects
Ex: – Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 I love my job

- Zeinab asks her dad if he likes his job. زينب تسأل والدها إذا كان يحب وظيفته.
- Zeinab's dad loves being a plumber. والد زينب يحب كونه سبّاكًا.
- When Dad was young, he wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic, but he was much better at fixing pipes and faucets.
  عندما كان الوالد صغيرًا في السن، أراد أن يكون سائق أتوبيس أو ميكانيكيًا، لكنه كان أفضل كثيرًا في إصلاح المواسير والحنفيات.
- Youssef likes his job as an electrician. He loves making things work.
  يوسف يحب عمله ككهربائي. فهو يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.
- Dad hopes the mail carrier has his parcel.
  يأمل الوالد أن يكون مع ساعي البريد الطرد الخاص به.
- Zeinab forgot to take out the trash for the garbage collector.
  نسيت زينب إخراج القمامة لجامع القمامة.

Lesson 2 Electricity

- Amira is an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.
  أميرة كهربائية. إنها تعرف كيف تتعامل مع الكهرباء بشكل آمن.
- Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light.
  تنتقل الكهرباء بسرعة كبيرة تقارب سرعة الضوء.
- If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.
  إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربائية، فلا يمكننا التحكُّم في أجسامنا. ويمكنها كذلك أن تصيبنا بالحروق.
- We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands.
  يجب ألّا نلمس أي شيء كهربائي بأيد مُبللة.

Lesson 3 Three cousins

- Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins. لارا، تاليا، وأمير أبناء عمّ.
- When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened anything that had electricity.
  عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب القيام بتجارب. كانت دائمًا تحمل مفكًا وتفتح أي شيء يعمل بالكهرباء.
- Talia played with blocks. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.
  لعبت تاليا بالمكعبات. كانت دائمًا تحمل شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.
- Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people.
  كان أمير دائمًا صبورًا جدًا وكان يحب مساعدة الناس.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

driving	قيادة	faucets	حنفيات	pipes	مواسير
trash	قمامة	light	ضوء	parcel	طرد
plugs	قوابس/فيش	socket	مقبس	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
blocks	مكعبات	lightning	البرق	electricity	الكهرباء
job	وظيفة/عمل	flash	وميض	screwdriver	مفك
workers	عُمّال	speed	سرعة	storm	عاصفة
cons	عيوب	mail bag	حقيبة البريد	pros	مميزات
radios	أجهزة الراديو	cousins	أولاد عمّ	exercise	تمرين
cell phones	الهواتف المحمولة	tape measure	شريط قياس	safety	السلامة/الأمان

Adjectives الصفات

electrical	كهربائي	curious	فضولي	older	أكبر سنًا
patient	صبور	easy	سهل	huge	ضخم
heavy	ثقيل	wet	مُبلل/رطب	messy	فوضوي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
fix	يصلِّح	fixed	tell	يخبر	told
like	يحب	liked	put	يضع	put
practice	يتدرب	practiced	forget	ينسى	forgot
wait	ينتظر	waited	get	يحصل على	got

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

knows how to ...	يعرف كيف ...	get angry	يغضب
On the one hand, ...	من ناحية، ...	On the other hand, ...	من ناحية أخرى، ...

Dictation

Lesson (1)

ميكانيكي	....	سبَّاك	....
جامع القمامة	....	سائق أتوبيس	....
كهربائي	....	ساعي البريد	....
مواسير	....	حنفيات	....
وظيفة/عمل	....	قمامة	....
قيادة	....	طرد	....
فوضوي	....	مُبلل	....

Lesson (2)

عاصفة	....	ضوء	....
سرعة	....	الكهرباء	....
مقابس	....	صدمة كهربائية	....
قوابس/فيش	....	بسرعة	....
بشكل آمن	....	البرق	....
خطير	....	أجسام	....

Lesson (3)

شريط قياس	....	مكعبات	....
مفك	....	صبور	....
أجهزة الراديو	....	السلامة/الأمان	....

Lesson (4)

حقيبة البريد	....	عيوب	....
مميزات	....	ثقيل	....

Lesson (5)

عامل نظافة	....	عُمَّال	....

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
fix	fixed	travel	....
forget	forgot	control	....
do	....	burn	....
use	....	become	....
bring	....	tell	....
wait	....	walk	....
talk	....	see	....
make	....	get	....
touch	....	put	....
connect	....	carry	....
hope	....	start	....
can	....	explain	....
meet	....	call	....
practice	....	experiment	....

حلّها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Jobs"

(bus driver – fix)

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل كلمة من الكلمات الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:

noun اسم

- A bus driver drives people to many different places.
- A plumber fixes pipes and faucets.

verb فعل

Model Paragraph

All jobs are important. A bus driver drives people to many different places. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"A job I want to do"

(electrician – make)

noun

- An .... connects electricity.
- The electrician .... things work.

verb

....

....

....

Important Paragraphs

Different jobs in your town

plumber – parcels

In my town, there is a **plumber** who fixes pipes and faucets. Also, there's a mail carrier. He delivers **parcels**.

Electricity

travels – wet hands

Electricity **travels** very fast, close to the speed of light. We mustn't touch anything electrical with **wet hands**.

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier

outside – heavy

On the one hand, mail carriers are **outside** all day. On the other hand, the mail bag is very **heavy**.

People who help us

electricians – bus drivers

The **electricians** connect electricity so that we can use lights. The **bus drivers** bring the children to school.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

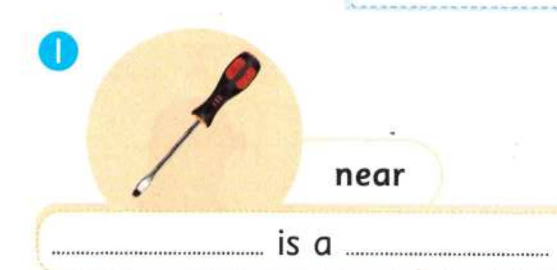
1 Do you remember the names of these jobs? Look and write:

هل تتذكَّر أسماء هذه الوظائف؟ انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

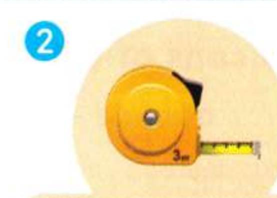
2 Look, read, and complete: انظر، اقرأ وأكمل:

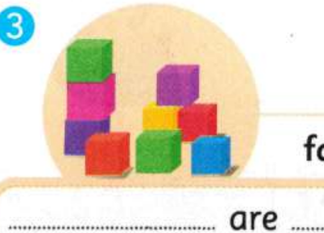
That – These – This – Those



1. near — .... is a ....

2. far — .... is a .... measure.





3. far — .... are ....

4. near — .... are a plumber's ....

3 Change the sentences into plural: حوِّل الجمل إلى صيغة الجمع:

1. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.

....

2. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

....

Test 1 on unit (5)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm a ....
   a. mail carrier   b. mechanic   c. plumber   d. teacher
2. Being outside is great when the weather is ....
   a. happy   b. good   c. bad   d. cold
3. I walk all day and get a lot of ....
   a. candy   b. milk   c. cola   d. exercise
4. I'm outside all ....
   a. month   b. week   c. day   d. year

(محافظة المنوفية - إدارة تلا التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A garbage collector collects our ....
   a. trash   b. animals   c. plants   d. meat

(محافظة بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف التعليمية)

2. A mail carrier brings us ....
   a. pipes   b. faucets   c. parcels   d. cars

(محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عابدين التعليمية)

3. .... fix cars and buses that take us to school.
   a. Farmers   b. Mechanics   c. Plumbers   d. Teachers

(محافظة المنيا - إدارة بني مزار التعليمية)

4. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a. big   b. dry   c. small   d. wet

(محافظة سوهاج - إدارة أخميم التعليمية)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lights – electricity – year – child – work

Adel is a clever electrician. He was very curious when he was a (1) .... He opened old cell phones and radios. His favorite question was: How does it (2) .... ? He studied for four years to work safely with (3) .... He connects electricity so that we can use (4) ....

(محافظة بني سويف – إدارة أهناسيا التعليمية)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she became older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. Today, Dalia is a clever and famous architect. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a. Dalia b. Mona c. Heba d. dog
2. Dalia always carried a ....
   a. pen b. ruler c. tape measure d. book

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Dalia make for her dog?

....

4. When can you call Dalia?

....

(محافظة قنا – إدارة أبو تشت التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Look at the sky. Those .... (is) stars.

(محافظة الإسماعيلية – إدارة أبو صوير التعليمية)

2. Are .... (that) the electrician's screwdrivers?

(محافظة كفر الشيخ – إدارة الرياض التعليمية)

3. This car .... (are) very expensive. (محافظة كفر الشيخ – إدارة فوه التعليمية)
4. I like .... (these) flower. (محافظة الغربية – إدارة السنطة التعليمية)

6 Punctuate the following:

– how many buses do they need (محافظة الفيوم – إدارة غرب الفيوم التعليمية)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your favorite job"

- What does he/she do?
- Where does he/she work?

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة سوهاج – إدارة المراغة التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (5)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plumber .... faucets.
   a. cleans b. takes away c. fixes d. drives
2. An electrician connects .... to homes.
   a. water b. garbage c. houses d. electricity
3. A/An .... takes away all the garbage.
   a. plumber b. garbage collector
   c. bus driver d. electrician
4. A bus driver takes .... to school.
   a. children b. horses c. dogs d. food

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plumber has to fix .... and faucets.
   a. pipes b. parcels c. garbage d. sockets
2. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of ....
   a. light b. burning c. electric shock d. lightning
3. Pros are the .... things.
   a. good b. bad c. difficult d. ugly
4. My cousin always carried a .... measure and a pencil.
   a. screwdriver b. block c. tape d. doll

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

practiced – plugs – patient – shock – dangerous

Amir is an electrician. He studied and (1).................... for three years before he became an electrician. He knows how to work safely with electricity. Electricity is very (2).................... . If we get an electric (3)...................., we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. Never put anything into a socket, only use (4).................... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I can't decide what I want to be when I grow up. I want to be a garbage collector to clean the city, but I will be outside all day and it may rain. I will get wet. My brother wants to be an electrician. <u>He</u> likes to connect electricity so that people can use lights. My dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars and buses that bring the children to school.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An electrician connects ....
   a. pipes b. electricity c. garbage d. plants
2. The underlined pronoun "<u>He</u>" refers to ....
   a. Tamer b. Tamer's dad
   c. Tamer's brother d. children

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are the cons of being a garbage collector?

....

4. Why does Tamer's brother like to connect electricity?

....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. These .... (is) my red and blue blocks.
2. .... (This) tape measures are near. I can use them.
3. .... (Those) is the bus that takes me to school. It's far.
4. .... (That) is my cell phone. I have it here in my hand.

6 Punctuate the following:

– i forgot to take out the trash

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Electricity"

(travels – wet hands)

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 What do you do?

Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

In this unit I will ...

- read and learn about more jobs.
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- know about prime numbers.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- learn about words with the prefix dis-.
- write about a job you want to do.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أقرأ وأتعلم عن المزيد من الوظائف.
- أستكشف ما هي الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
- أتعرف على الأعداد الأولية.
- أميّز وأنطق الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.
- أتعلم عن كلمات بها بادئة "-dis".
- اكتب عن وظيفة أريد العمل بها.

Did you know?

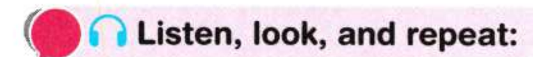
- In 2019, about 13 million tourists came to Egypt.

هل كنت تعلم؟

- في عام 2019، زار مصر 13 مليون سائح تقريبًا.

Lesson 1 What do you do?

You will learn
vocabulary about industries.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: مفردات تتعلّق بالصناعات.


Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

Play Audio

Main Vocabulary مفردات أساسية

Industry: education التعليم
Job: librarian أمين مكتبة

Industry: farming الزراعة
Job: farmer مُزارع

Industry: fishing صيد السمك
Job: fisherman صيَّاد السمك

Industry: tourism السياحة
Job: guide مُرشد سياحي

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

nutrients	عناصر غذائية	library	مكتبة	job	وظيفة/عمل
information	معلومات	hotels	فنادق	factory	مصنع
tourists	سياح	boat	قارب	history	تاريخ
restaurants	مطاعم	early	مبكرًا	market	سوق

Tip!
- **An industry** is a business that produces a specific type of thing or gives a special kind of service.

الصناعة هي الأعمال التجارية التي تنتج نوعًا معينًا من شيء ما أو تقدم نوعًا خاصًّا من الخدمة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	**Past ماضي**	**Present مضارع**	**Past ماضي**
pick يقطف	picked	catch يصطاد	caught
explain يشرح	explained	sell يبيع	sold
visit يزور	visited	tell يخبر	told

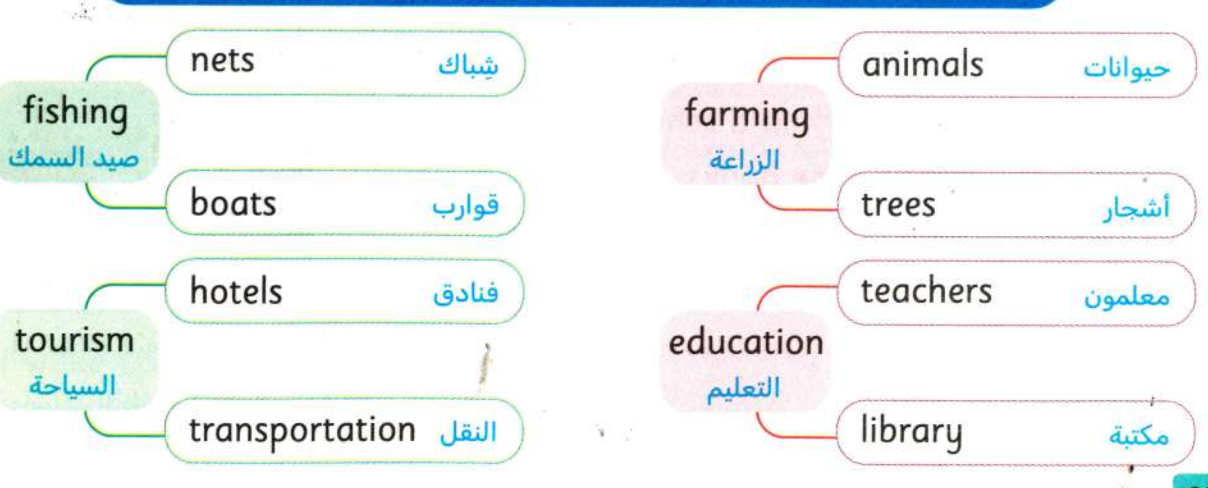
Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

wake up ... يستيقظ ...	all over the world جميع أنحاء العالم
look after ... يعتني بـ ...	come back يعود

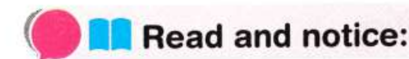
(Reading) main points النقاط الأساسية في القراءة

- A fisherman catches fish every day and sells them in the market.
  يصطاد الصيَّاد السمك كل يوم ويبيعه في السوق.
- A farmer grows orange trees and sends a lot of oranges to the factory to make orange juice.
  يقوم المزارع بزراعة أشجار البرتقال ويرسل الكثير من البرتقال إلى المصنع لصُنع عصير البرتقال.
- A guide explains the history to the people who come to his county.
  يشرح المرشد السياحي التاريخ للناس الذين يأتون لبلده.
- A librarian looks after the books and helps the children find the information they need.
  أمين المكتبة يعتني بالكُتب ويساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Words connected to industries كلمات مرتبطة بصناعات



Reading



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

I'm a **fisherman**. I wake up very early every day, and I go out on my boat and **catch fish**. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

أنا صيّاد سمك. أستيقظ مبكرًا جدًّا كل يوم، وأخرج على متن قاربي وأصطاد السمك. ثُمَّ أعود بعد الظهر وأبيع أسماكي في السوق. تذهب أسماكي إلى المطاعم والبيوت في جميع أنحاء العالم.

I'm a **farmer**. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I **pick** the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

أنا مُزارع. أنا أزرع البرتقال. طوال العام، أعتني بالأشجار وأمدها بالماء والعناصر الغذائية. ثُمَّ أقطف الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال. كما أنني أيضًا أبيع بعض برتقالي إلى السوبر ماركت.

I'm a **guide**. I work in the **tourism industry**. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

أنا مرشد سياحي. أعمل في صناعة السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدي ووظيفتي هي شرح التاريخ وإخبار السياح بالكثير من المعلومات الشيّقة عن الأماكن التي يزورونها.

I'm a **librarian**. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

أنا أمينة مكتبة. أعمل في مكتبة المدرسة. وظيفتي هي الاعتناء بجميع الكتب. أشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة، وأساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Reading Practice

Activity 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

Play Audio

1. A guide works in the .... industry.
   a. tourism b. farming c. education d. fishing
2. People from all over the world come to his ....
   a. boat b. country c. factory d. restaurant
3. A guide's job is to .... the history.
   a. sell b. grow c. help d. explain
4. He tells the .... lots of interesting information about the places they visit.
   a. fishermen b. farmers c. tourists d. children

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

nutrients – catches – factory – farmer – guide

A fisherman goes out on his boat very early every day. He (1).................... fish and sells them in the market. A (2).................... looks after his orange trees and gives them water and (3).................... . Then, he picks the fruit and sends a lot of the fruit to the (4).................... to make orange juice.

Activity 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. history – A guide – the tourists. – the – explains – to ....
2. in – works – a – library. – A librarian – school ....

Activity 4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- i wake up very early every day

....

Lesson 1 Activities

Activity 1 Look and fill in the missing letters: انظر وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1. li _ ra _ ian
2. g _ i _ e
3. f _ r _ er
4. fis _ er _ an

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A fisherman .... his fish in the market.
   a. sells b. buys c. catches d. eats
2. A .... looks after the trees all year.
   a. guide b. farmer c. librarian d. fisherman
3. A guide works in the .... industry.
   a. education b. farming c. fishing d. tourism
4. A .... looks after all the books.
   a. farmer b. librarian c. fisherman d. guide

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

find – education – books – school – tourism

In our school, we have a librarian. A librarian works in the (1).................... industry. She works in the (2).................... library. A librarian's job is to help us (3).................... the information we need. She also looks after all the books and buys lots of new (4).................... for the school library.

Lesson 1 Homework

Activity 1 Look and write the industry: انظر واكتب الصناعة:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

Activity 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)	(B)
1. A fisherman works in...	a. the tourism industry.
2. A librarian works in...	b. the farming industry.
3. A guide works in...	c. the fishing industry.
4. A farmer works in...	d. the education industry.
	e. the transportation industry.

Activity 3 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. A <u>guide</u> works in the school library. (....................)
2. A fisherman goes out on his <u>tree</u> to catch fish. (....................)
3. In the <u>farming</u> industry, a guide explains the history to the tourists. (....................)
4. A farmer sells some of his oranges to the <u>library</u>. (....................)

Activity 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"Tourism industry"

(guide – history)

....

....

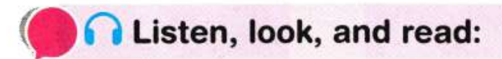
....

Lesson 2 CLIL: Science

You will learn

the difference between renewable and non-renewable energy sources.

ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: الفرق بين مصادر الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.



Listen, look, and read: استمع، انظر واقرأ:

Renewable energy sources مصادر طاقة متجددة

wind energy طاقة الرياح

solar energy الطاقة الشمسية

wave energy طاقة الأمواج

Non-renewable energy sources مصادر طاقة غير متجددة

oil بترول

coal فحم

gas غاز

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

wood خشب	window نافذة	mango tree شجرة مانجو
seed بذرة	money مال	beautiful جميل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
plant يزرع	planted	sell يبيع	sold
need يحتاج	needed	give يعطي	gave

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

grew bigger and bigger نمى بشكل أكبر وأكبر	cut down ... يقطع ...
Don't worry لا تقلق	looked out of ... نظر من خارج ...

Definitions تعريفات

Renewable متجدد	can grow again or never run out يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنفد أبدًا

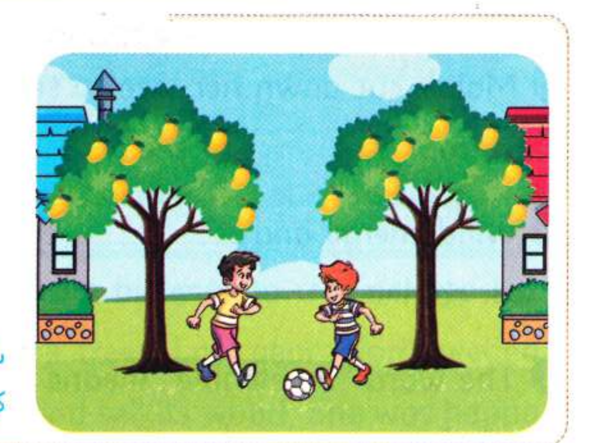
Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Two mango trees شجرتا المانجو

Beginning

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

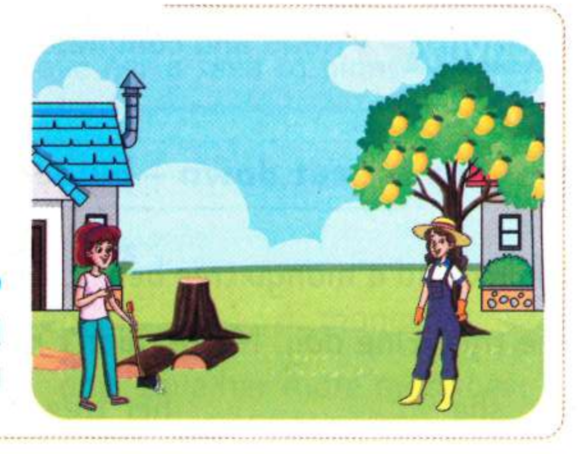
سارة وملك أختان. كان لكل أخت شجرة مانجو جميلة بجوار منزلها. كل عام، تأكل الأختان مانجو جميلة. لعب أطفالهما تحت الشجرتين.



Middle

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's **cut down** my tree. I can sell the wood." She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

في أحد الأيام، قالت ملك: «أنا لا أحتاج إلى المانجو. أنا أحتاج إلى المال. هيًا نقطع شجرتي. يمكنني بيع الخشب». قطعت ملك الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة.



End

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes. Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood. "Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."

في العام التالي، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. أعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو. نظرت ملك من خلال النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يَعُد لديها مانجو ولا مزيد من الخشب. قالت سارة: «لا تقلقي، ازرعي بذرة المانجو هذه، وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة».

Lesson 2 Activities

Activity 1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Each sister had a beautiful .... tree next to her house.
   a. banana b. mango c. lemon d. strawberry
2. Malak cut down her tree to sell the ....
   a. mango b. seed c. window d. wood
3. Wind energy and .... energy are renewable energy sources.
   a. coal b. oil c. solar d. gas
4. The word "renewable" means "can grow again or never .... out."
   a. run b. cut c. look d. grow

Activity 2 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

cut down – bigger – children – sell – money

Malak had a mango tree behind her house. Her (1).................... played under the tree. One day, Malak didn't need mangoes. She needed (2).................... . So, she (3).................... her tree. She wanted to (4).................... the wood. The next year, she had no mangoes and no more wood.

Activity 3 **Answer the following questions:** أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Where did Sara and Malak have their mango trees?
   ....
2. Why did Malak cut down her mango tree?
   ....
3. What did Sara give Malak at the end?
   ....
4. What are some examples of non-renewable energy sources?
   ....

Lesson 2 Homework

Activity 1 **Look and write:** انظر واكتب:

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

Activity 2 **Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nora and Farah are cousins. Each cousin had a big mango tree next to her house. They ate beautiful mangoes from their trees. Last year, Nora needed money, so she decided to cut down her tree and sell its wood. She was happy to sell <u>it</u>. The next year, Farah's tree grew bigger and gave her more mangoes. Nora had no tree or more wood, so Farah gave her a seed to plant.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to the tree's ....
   a. mango b. seed c. wood d. money
2. Next year, Farah's tree grew .... and gave her more mangoes.
   a. bigger b. smaller c. shorter d. faster

B **Answer the following questions:** أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

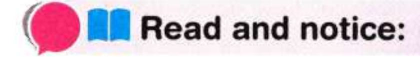
3. What did Nora decide to do when she needed money?
   ....
4. Why did Farah give Nora a seed?
   ....

Activity 3 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- The tree gave sara more mangoes
  ....

Lesson 3 (A) Fresh fish van

You will learn to read a story about a fisherman.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: قراءة قصة عن صيَّاد سمكٍ.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

fisherman	صيَّاد سمكٍ	village	قرية	van	شاحنة
engine	محرك	problem	مشكلة	sound	صوت
grandpa	جد	mechanic	ميكانيكي	house	منزل

Adjectives الصفات

disappointed	مُحبط	simple	بسيط	surprised	متفاجئ/مندهش
lovely	جميل/رائع	old	عجوز/قديم	fresh	طازج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

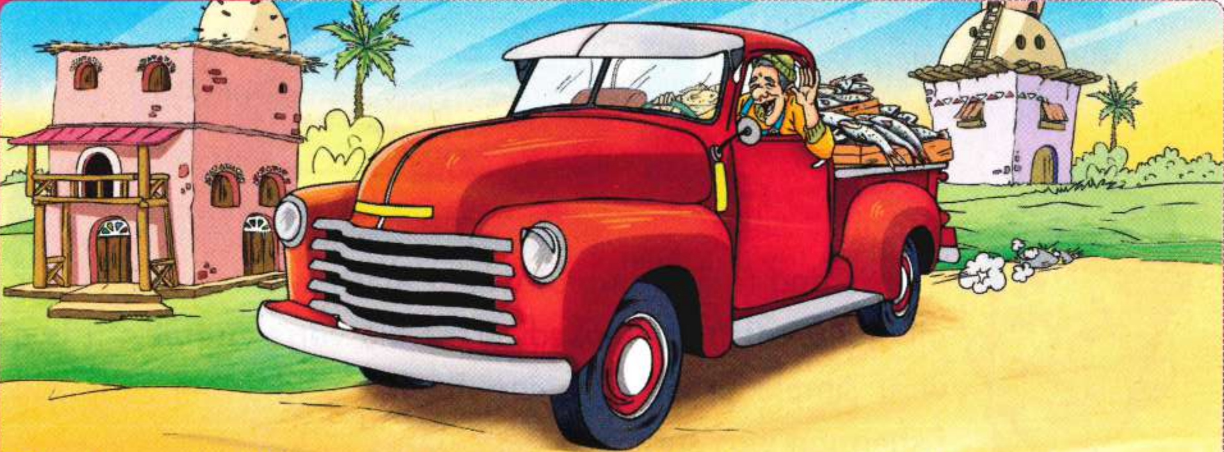
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
shout	يصيح	shouted	hear	يسمع	heard
start	يبدأ	started	get	يحصل على	got
want	يريد	wanted	see	يرى	saw
fix	يصلِّح	fixed	teach	يُعلِّم	taught
like	يحب	liked	can	يستطيع	could
help	يساعد	helped	give	يعطي	gave

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

drives around ...	يتجوَّل حول ...	in front of...	أمام ...
Come and get ...	تعالَ واحصل على...	start his van	يُشغِّل شاحنته

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

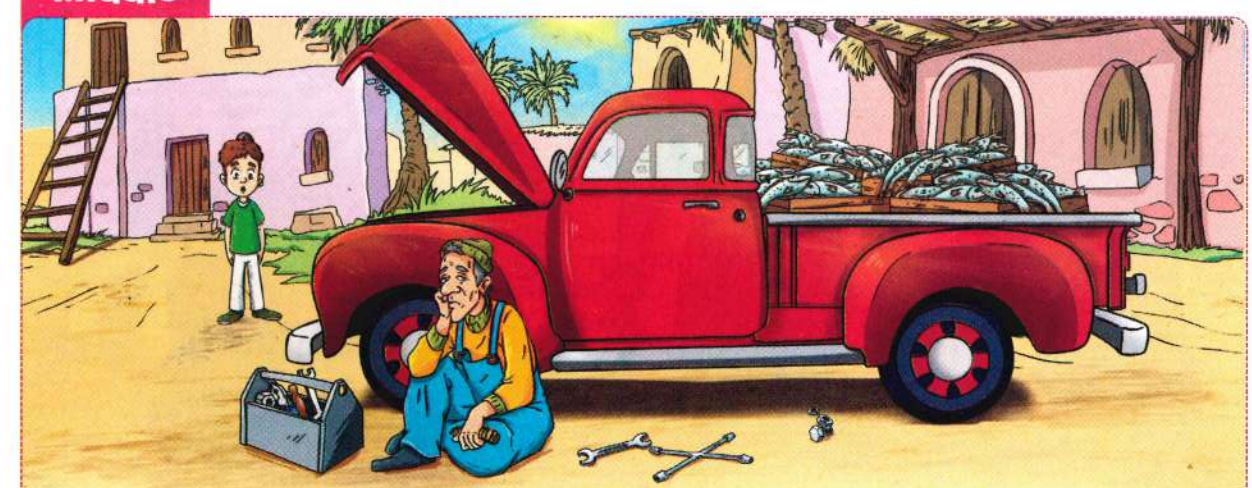
Beginning



There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."

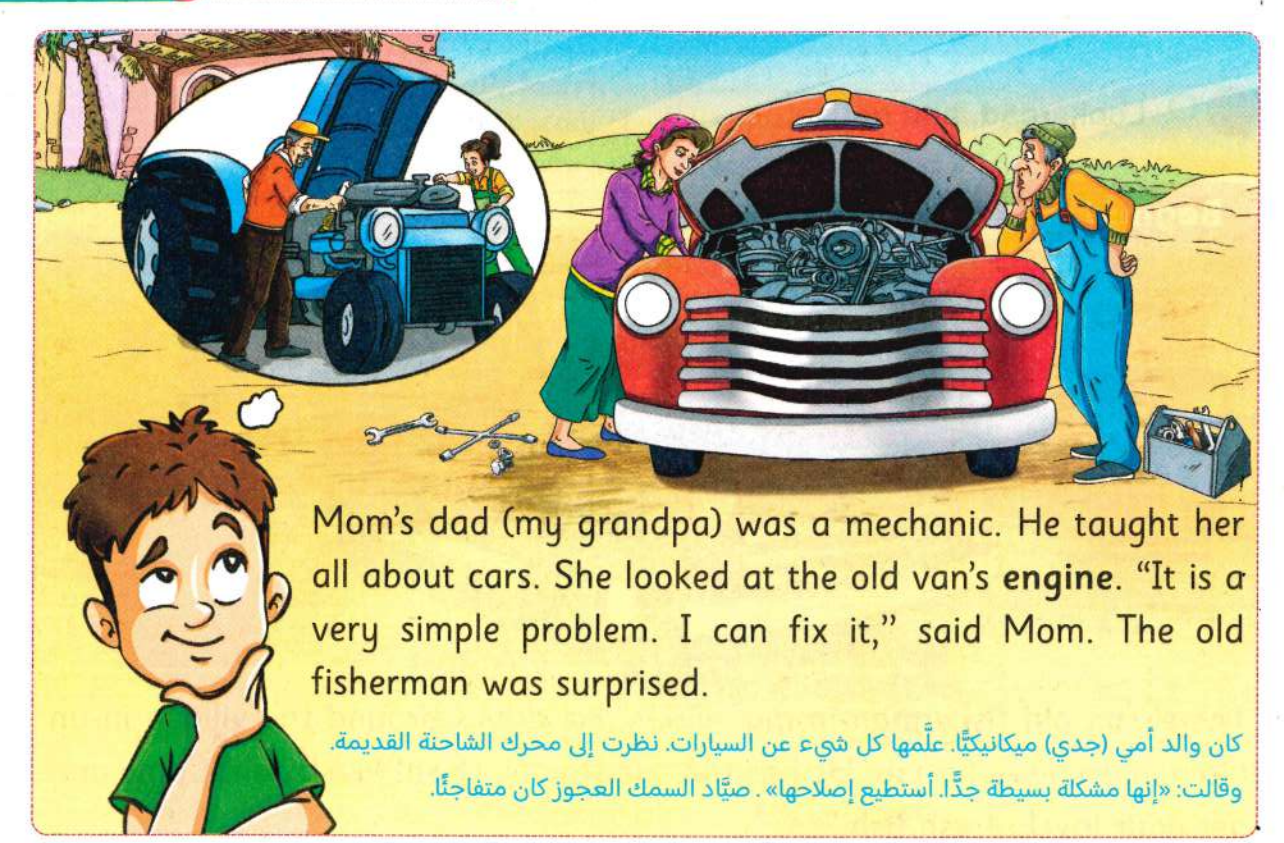
يوجد صيَّاد سمك عجوز في قريتي. يتجوَّل حول القرية في شاحنة قديمة. فهو يحب وظيفته. ويستمتع بها. يصيح صيَّاد السمك: «سمك! سمك طازج! تعالَ واحصل على السمك الطازج الجميل».

Middle



One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and **disappointed**. My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.

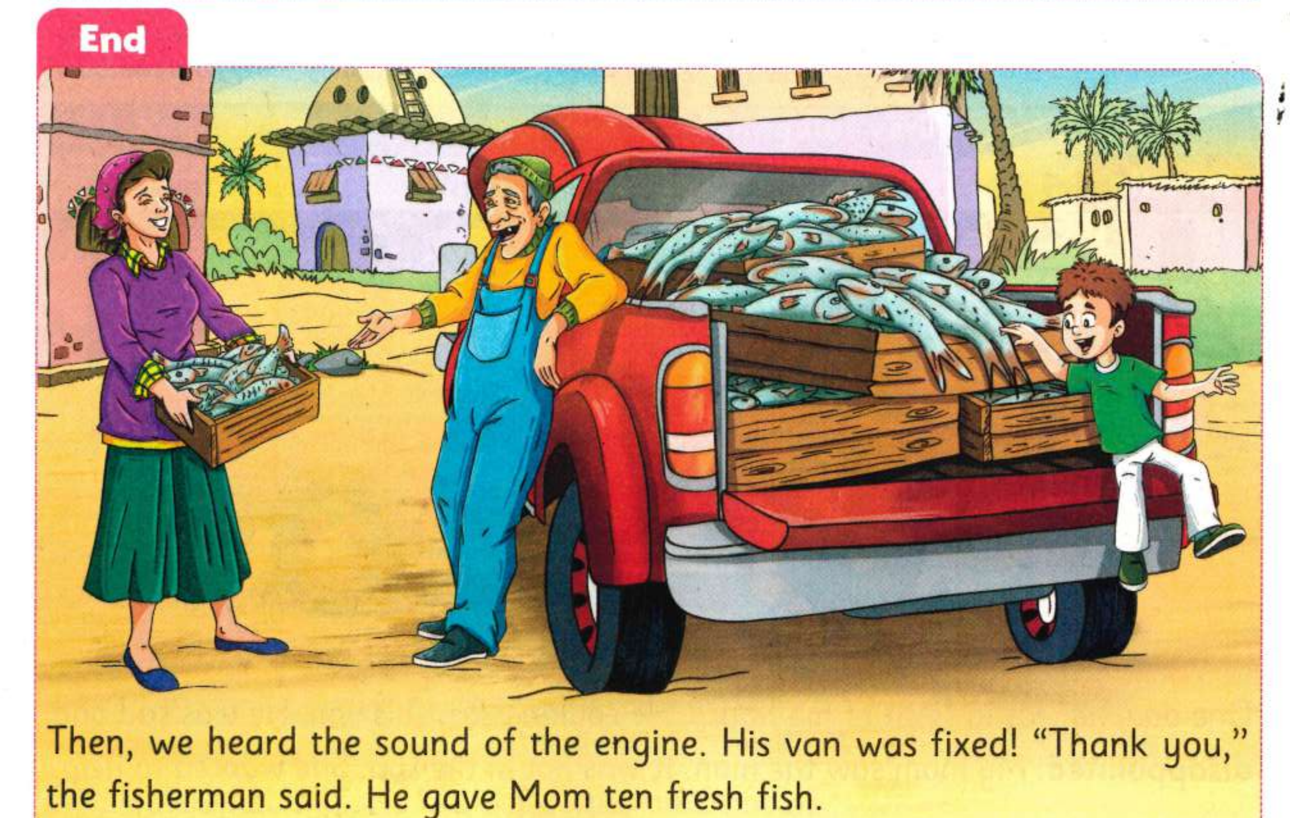
في أحد الأيام، كان أمام منزلي. ولم يتمكن من تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينًا ومُحبطًا. أمي رأت الرجل. كان الجو حارًّا في الشمس. وأرادت المساعدة.



Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's **engine**. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.

كان والد أمي (جدي) ميكانيكيًّا. علَّمها كل شيء عن السيارات. نظرت إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة. وقالت: «إنها مشكلة بسيطة جدًّا. أستطيع إصلاحها» . صيَّاد السمك العجوز كان متفاجئًا.

End



Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

ثم، سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح شاحنته! قال صيَّاد السمك: «شكرا لكِ». وأعطى أمِّي عشرة سمكات طازجة.

Lesson 3A Activities

Activity 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fisherman drives around the .... in an old van.
   a. city b. country c. tree d. village
2. The fisherman was sad and .... He couldn't start his van.
   a. disappointed b. happy c. surprised d. excited
3. My grandpa was a .... He taught Mom all about cars.
   a. fisherman b. mechanic c. guide d. librarian
4. We heard the .... of the engine.
   a. problem b. house c. sound d. sun

Activity 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

engine – van – sad – fresh – surprised

One day, an old fisherman was in front of my house. He couldn't start his old (1).................... . Mom saw the man and wanted to help him. She looked at the old van's (2).................... and fixed it. The old fisherman was (3).................... . He thanked Mom and gave her ten (4).................... fish.

Activity 3 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. How did Mom know all about cars?

   ....

2. Why was the fisherman surprised?

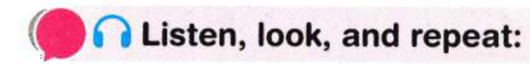
   ....

3. What did the fisherman give Mom at the end?

   ....

B Pronunciation

You will learn
the pronunciation of short vowel sounds.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: نُطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة.



Listen, look, and repeat: استمع، انظر وردِّد:

Short Vowels

letter (a) = short a /æ/

van شاحنة

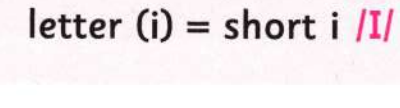
letter (u) = short u /ʌ/

sun شمس

letter (e) = short e /e/

ten عشرة

letter (i) = short i /I/



fish سمكة

Extra Words كلمات إضافية

Short (a)	Short (e)	Short (i)	Short (u)
sad حزين	fresh طازج	simple بسيط	fun مرح
dad أب	get يحصل على	fix يصلِّح	
can يستطيع	engine محرك	village قرية	
man رَجُل	help يساعد	his مِلكه	
stand يقف	sell يبيع	river نهر	
	men رجال		
	leg رِجْل		

Lesson 3B Activities

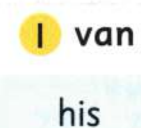
Activity 1 Look, say, and fill in the missing letter: انظر، قُل وأكمل الحرف الناقص:

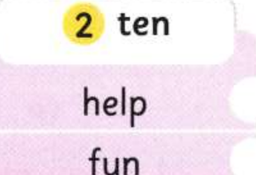
1. t _ n
2. f _ sh
3. s _ n
4. v _ n

Activity 2 Listen and circle the word with the odd sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المختلف:

1. his – can – fish – simple
2. sad – van – get – dad
3. sun – fresh – ten – help
4. sun – fun – run – village

Activity 3 Say and check (✓) the word that has the same sound:
قُل وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمة التي لها نفس الصوت:





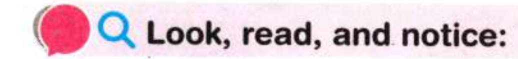
1 van	2 ten	3 fish
his	help	dad
man	fun	village

Activity 4 Look, read, and complete the sentences: انظر، اقرأ وأكمل الجُمل:

1. My mom bought fresh .... yesterday.
2. You can have fun in the ....
3. The old fisherman has an old ....
4. There are .... men standing on one leg.

Language

You will learn
about words with the prefix (dis-).
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: عن كلمات بها البادئة (dis-).



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

The prefix "dis-" is used to give the opposite meaning of a word. The prefix "dis-" means "not". تُستخدم البادئة "dis-" لإعطاء المعنى العكسي للكلمة. البادئة "dis-" تعني «لا».
Ex: disagree = not agree

disappointed محبط

dislike لا يحب

disobey لا يطيع

disappear يختفي

disagree لا يتفق

Lesson 3 Language Activities

Activity 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She (disobeys – likes – dislikes) ice cream. She hates it.
2. The boy is (appeared – disappointed – disappeared). He didn't pass the test.
3. I'm sorry because I (disobeyed – agreed – obeyed) my mom.
4. The rabbit (disappointed – disappeared – disagreed) from the hat.

Activity 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. These friends .... (agree). They are different.
2. I like bananas, but I .... (like) mangoes.

CLIL: Math

Prime numbers

You will learn
about prime numbers.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: عن الأعداد الأوَّلية.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.
العدد الأوَّلي هو العدد الذي لا يقبل القسمة إلَّا على نفسه وعلى 1، مثل: 2، 3، 5، إلخ.

Ex: 7 is a prime number.
- divided by 1 → $7 \div 1 = 7$
- divided by itself → $7 \div 7 = 1$

Ex: 8 is not a prime number.
- → $8 \div 2 = 4$
- → $8 \div 1 = 8$

List of prime numbers up to 100

2	3	5	7	11	13	17	19	23	29
31	37	41	43	47	53	59	61	67	71
73	79	83	89	97					

Lesson 3C Activities

Activity 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

a. 10 is (a prime – not a prime) number.
b. 53 is (a prime – not a prime) number.

Activity 2 Add the numbers and check (✓) the correct answer: اجمع الأعداد وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة:

a. 17 + 20 = 37

- a prime number ✓
- not a prime number

b. 12 + 5 = ...
- a prime number
- not a prime number

c. 80 + 4 = ...
- a prime number
- not a prime number

Lesson 3 Homework

Activity 1 **Say, sort the underlined words, and write:** قُل، صنِّف الكلمات التي تحتها خط واكتب:

- I live in a village.
- He has a blue van.
- We went to the beach and had fun.
- She always helps her neighbors.

Short (a)	Short (i)	Short (e)	Short (u)
....	....	....	....

Activity 2 **Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In my village, there's an old fisherman who likes his job. One day, he was in front of my house and he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My mom saw the man and decided to help him. My mom's dad was a mechanic so he taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine and said she could fix it. The old fisherman was surprised. He thanked Mom and gave her ten fresh fish.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The old .... couldn't start his van.
   a. farmer   b. fisherman   c. mechanic   d. plumber
2. Mom's .... taught her all about cars.
   a. dad   b. sister   c. mom   d. uncle

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. How was the fisherman when he couldn't start his van?

....

4. What did Mom decide to do when she saw the man?

....

Lesson 4 Writing

You will learn to write about a job you want to do.
ستتعلَّم في هذا الدرس: الكتابة عن الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

teacher	معلِّم	students	تلاميذ	world	عالَم
questions	أسئلة	class	فصل	people	أشخاص/ناس

Adjectives الصفات

the best	الأفضل	surprising	مفاجئ	patient	صبور
different	مختلف	exciting	مثير/شيق	hard	شاق/صعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
learn	يتعلَّم	learned	teach	يُعلِّم	taught
change	يُغيِّر	changed	think	يفكِّر	thought
encourage	يشجِّع	encouraged	know	يعرف	knew
ask	يسأل	asked	do	يفعل	did
answer	يجيب	answered	is	يكون (للمفرد)	was

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

want to ...	يريد أن ...	ready to ...	مستعد لـ ...
need to ...	يحتاج إلى ...	work for many hours	يعمل لساعات عديدة
in the world	في العالَم	For me, ...	بالنسبة لي، ...

When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world." For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very **patient**. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

عندما يسألني الناس: «ماذا تريدين أن تكوني؟» أجيب: «أريد أن أكون معلمة. بالنسبة لي، هي أفضل وظيفة في العالم». بالنسبة للمعلم، كل يوم مختلف. فدائمًا ما يطرح التلاميذ أسئلة مفاجئة. يستطيع المعلم تغيير حياة تلاميذه، لذا يحتاج المعلمون إلى أن يكونوا صبورين جدًّا. فهم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق، لكنه شيّق.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to **encourage** their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

يحتاج المعلمون إلى التفكير بسرعة. ويحتاجون إلى تشجيع تلاميذهم. المعلم الجيد دائمًا مستعد للتعلم. يعلّم المعلمون تلاميذهم، ولكن التلاميذ يعلّمون أيضًا معلميهم. فالجميع في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Why I want to be a teacher لماذا أريد أن أكون معلمًا	Things a good teacher should do الأشياء التي يجب على المعلم الجيد القيام بها
Every day is different. كل يوم مختلف.	Teachers need to think quickly. يحتاج المعلمون إلى التفكير بسرعة.
It's an exciting job. إنها وظيفة شيقة.	They need to encourage their students. يحتاجون إلى تشجيع تلاميذهم.
A teacher can change their students' lives. يستطيع المعلم أن يغيّر حياة تلاميذه.	Teachers need to be very patient. يحتاج المعلمون إلى أن يكونوا صبورين جدًّا.
Everyone in the class knows different things. فالجميع في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.	A good teacher is always ready to learn. المعلم الجيد دائمًا مستعد للتعلّم.

Lesson 4 Activities

Activity 1 Read and sort the following sentences: اقرأ وصنّف الجُمل الآتية:

1. He needs to be very patient.
2. He wants to fix things.
3. He should know how to fix things.
4. It's an interesting job.

Why Maged wants to be a plumber	Things a good plumber should do
....	....
....	....

Activity 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali wants to be a teacher. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives, so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Students always ask .... questions.
   a. patient b. hard c. ready d. surprising
2. Teachers need to .... their students.
   a. think b. encourage c. learn d. want

B Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

3. What does Ali want to be? ....
4. Why should teachers need to be very patient? ....

Lesson 4 Homework

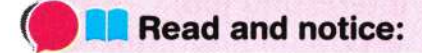
Activity Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثماني عشرة (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية:

"Your dream job"
(want – good)

....
....

Lesson 5 Project

You will learn
how to make a poster.
ستتعلّم في هذا الدرس: كيفية صنع ملصق.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

carefully بعناية/باهتمام	shelf رف	trash قمامة

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

say thank you يقول شكرًا لك	listen to ... يستمع إلى ...
put my books back ... أعيد كتبي ...	get off ... ينزل من ...

How to show respect كيفية إظهار الاحترام

I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw trash.
أنا أحترم عاملة النظافة.
أنا لا أرمي القمامة.

I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.
أنا أحترم المعلّم.
أنا أستمع إليه باهتمام.

I respect the bus driver.
I say thank you when I get off the bus.
أنا أحترم سائق الأتوبيس. أنا أقول شكرًا لك عندما أنزل من الأتوبيس.

I respect the librarian.
I put my books back on the shelf.
أنا أحترم أمينة المكتبة.
أنا أعيد كُتبي إلى مكانها على الرف.

Lesson 5 Homework

Activity Make a poster about how to show respect to the people around you
اصنع ملصقًا عن كيفية إظهار الاحترام للناس من حولك

Unit 6 Review

Vocabulary

Industry: education
Job: librarian

Industry: fishing
Job: fisherman

Industry: farming
Job: farmer

Industry: tourism
Job: guide

Phonics

Short vowels

a /æ/	i /I/
van	fish
dad	fix
can	village
man	his
stand	river

e /e/	u /ʌ/
ten	sun
get	fun
engine	
help	
sell	
men	
leg	

Language

The prefix (dis-)

- The prefix "dis-" means "not".

disappointed

dislike

disobey

disappear

disagree

Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 What do you do?

- A fisherman catches fish every day and sells them in the market.
  يصطاد الصيّاد السمك كل يوم ويبيعه في السوق.
- A farmer grows orange trees and sends a lot of oranges to the factory to make orange juice.
  يقوم المزارع بزراعة أشجار البرتقال ويرسل الكثير من البرتقال إلى المصنع لصُنع عصير البرتقال.
- A guide explains the history to the people that come to his country.
  يشرح المرشد السياحي التاريخ للناس الذين يأتون لبلده.
- A librarian looks after the books and helps the children find the information they need. أمين المكتبة يعتني بالكُتب ويساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Lesson 2 Two mango trees

- Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree.
  سارة وملك أختان. كان لكل أخت شجرة مانجو جميلة.
- One day, Malak decided to cut down her tree to sell wood and get money.
  في أحد الأيام، قررت ملك قطع شجرتها لبيع الخشب والحصول على المال.
- Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and gave Sara more mangoes.
  في العام التالي، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة وأعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو.
- Malak had no mangoes and no more wood, so Sara gave her a mango seed to plant. It will grow into a big tree.
  لم يعد لدى ملك المزيد من المانجو والخشب، لذا أعطتها سارة بذرة مانجو لتزرعها. سوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة.

Lesson 3 Fresh fish van

- The story is about an old fisherman in a boy's village. He drives an old van to sell his fish. القصة عن صيّاد سمك عجوز في قرية ولد. هو يقود شاحنة قديمة لبيع أسماكه.
- One day, he couldn't start his van and he was sad and disappointed.
  في أحد الأيام، لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته وكان حزينًا ومحبطًا.
- The boy's mom saw the old fisherman and decided to help him.
  رأت أم الولد صياد السمك العجوز وقررت مساعدته.
- Mom's dad was a mechanic and taught her all about cars.
  كان والد أمي ميكانيكيًا وعلّمها كل شيء عن السيارات.
- Mom fixed the van. The old fisherman thanked her and gave Mom ten fresh fish. أصلحت الأم الشاحنة. شكرها صياد السمك العجوز وأعطى الأم عشر أسماك طازجة.

Summary Tables

Nouns الأسماء

seed	بذرة	market	سوق	factory	مصنع
country	بلد	history	تاريخ	information	معلومات
tourists	سياح	library	مكتبة	mechanic	ميكانيكي
teacher	معلّم	students	تلاميذ	shelf	رف
wood	خشب	world	عالَم	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
money	مال	village	قرية	van	شاحنة
engine	محرك	trash	قمامة	class	فصل

Adjectives الصفات

exciting	مثير/شيق	simple	بسيط	patient	صبور
old	عجوز/قديم	disappointed	مُحبط	surprised	متفاجئ/مندهش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pick	يقطف	picked	hear	يسمع	heard
explain	يشرح	explained	catch	يصطاد	caught
encourage	يشجّع	encouraged	sell	يبيع	sold
shout	يصيح	shouted	teach	يُعلّم/يُدرّس	taught
plant	يزرع	planted	give	يُعطي	gave
fix	يصلّح	fixed	see	يرى	saw

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look after ...	يعتني بـ ...	all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم
Don't worry	لا تقلق	drives around...	يتجوّل حول...
come back	يعود	cut down ...	يقطع...

Dictation

Lesson (1)

التعليم	....	أمين مكتبة	....
الزراعة	....	مُزارع	....
صيد السمك	....	صيَّاد السمك	....
السياحة	....	مُرشد سياحي	....
سوق	....	عناصر غذائية	....
مكتبة	....	معلومات	....
مصنع	....	مطاعم	....
سياح	....	وظيفة/عمل	....

Lesson (2)

بذرة	....	خشب	....
بترول	....	غاز	....
فحم	....	طاقة الأمواج	....
طاقة الرياح	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....

Lesson (3)

شاحنة	....	محرك	....
صوت	....	مشكلة	....
شمس	....	سمكة	....
عشرة	....	مُحبط	....

Lesson (4)

معلِّم	....	تلاميذ	....
شيق/مثير	....	صبور	....

Lesson (5)

رف	....	بعناية/باهتمام	....

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
pick	picked	like	....
can	could	hear	....
explain	....	fix	....
sell	....	see	....
tell	....	want	....
need	....	teach	....
think	....	know	....
start	....	ask	....
catch	....	answer	....
visit	....	change	....
help	....	encourage	....
do	....	give	....
plant	....	learn	....
shout	....	get	....

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

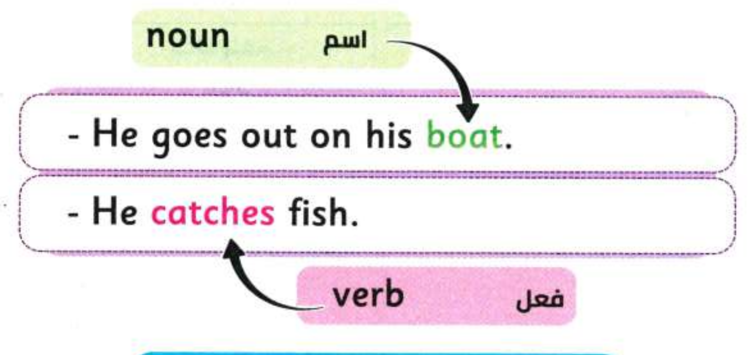
Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"A fisherman"

(boat – catch)

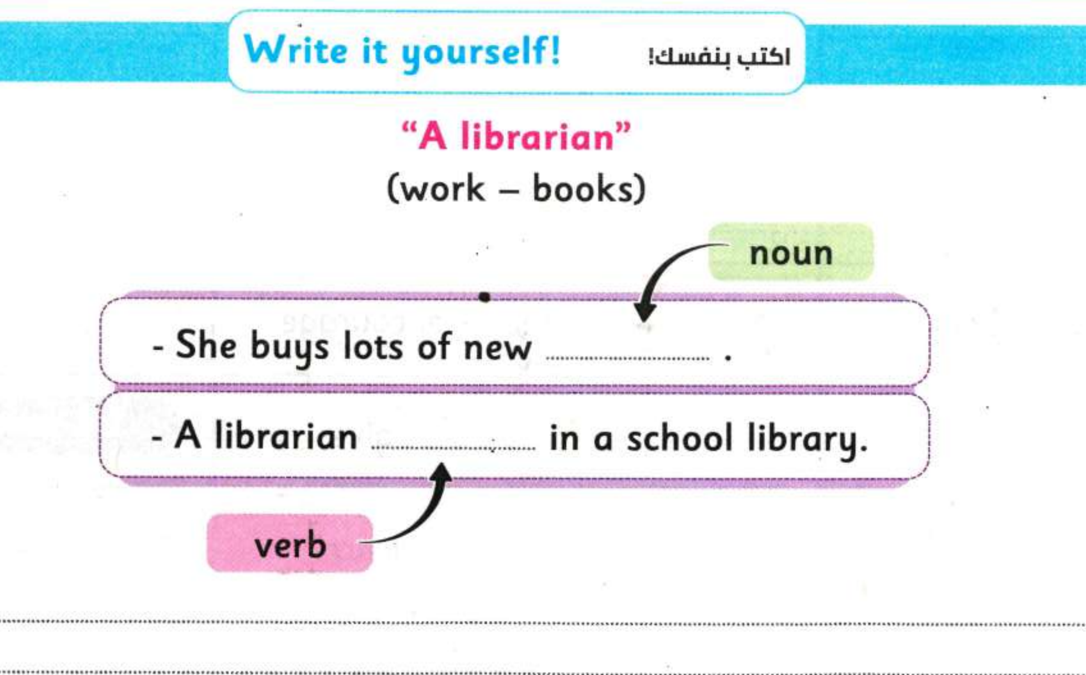
محافظة دمياط - إدارة السرو التعليمية

يتم استخدام كل كلمة من الكلمات الإرشادية لتكوين جملة، كما يلي:



Model Paragraph

My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up very early. He goes out on his boat. He catches fish.



....

....

....

Important Paragraphs

A fisherman

catches – sells

A fisherman goes out on his boat. He **catches** fish. Then, he **sells** his fish in the market.

A guide

tourism industry – history

A guide works in the **tourism industry**. Tourists come to his country, and he explains the **history** to them.

A librarian

library – books

A librarian works in a school **library**. She looks after the **books** and helps children find the information they need.

A job you want to do

teacher – encourage

I want to be a **teacher**. Teachers need to **encourage** their students. They need to be very patient.

Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي (مجاب عنه في الملحق)

1 In which industries do these people work? في أي الصناعات يعمل هؤلاء الناس؟

1. fishing
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

2 Look and write. Complete the sentences: انظر واكتب. أكمل الجُمل:

disagree – disappointed – dislikes

1. The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.

2. She .... ice cream.

3. These friends ....

3 Write each energy source in the table: اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة في الجدول:

1. oil
2. coal
3. wind energy
4. wave energy
5. solar energy
6. gas

Renewable	Non-renewable

Test 1 on unit (6)

امتحان مُجمَّع من مختلف الإدارات

(A) Listening

Play Audio

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali's father is a ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. fisherman d. farmer
2. He catches ....
   a. cows b. cats c. fish d. goats
3. He works on a ....
   a. boat b. school c. hospital d. bank
4. He sells his fish in the ....
   a. library b. market c. office d. museum

(محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية)

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... the sound of the engine.
   a. grow b. drove c. draw d. hear

(محافظة القاهرة – إدارة السلام التعليمية)

2. I help tourists. I am a/an ....
   a. electrician b. farmer c. guide d. fisherman

(محافظة الغربية – إدارة السنطة التعليمية)

3. The librarian looks after the ....
   a. books b. plants c. letters d. tourists

(محافظة الفيوم – إدارة يوسف الصديق التعليمية)

4. Farmers sell oranges to the ....
   a. desert b. park c. supermarket d. school

(محافظة المنيا – إدارة بني مزار التعليمية)

3 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

quickly – surprising – change – knows – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask (1) .... questions. A teacher can (2) .... their students' lives, so teachers need to be patient. Teachers need to think (3) .... Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class (4) .... different things. (محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية)

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:**

Sara and Noha are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate **beautiful** mangoes and watched their children playing under the trees. One day, Noha needed money, so she cut down her tree and sold the wood to get money. After a year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes. Noha was sad. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about ....
   a. germination b. two mango trees
   c. favorite subject d. teachers
2. The underlined word "**beautiful**" means ....
   a. bad b. lovely c. ugly d. noisy

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Noha cut down her tree?

....

4. What happened to Sara's tree after a year?

....

(محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدي سالم التعليمية)

(C) Writing

5 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I'm sorry because I .... (obeyed) my mom.
(محافظة الفيوم - إدارة إبشواي التعليمية)
2. The rabbit .... (appeared). I can't see it.
(محافظة الغربية - إدارة السنطة التعليمية)
3. The boy is .... (appointed). He didn't pass the test.
(محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورفؤاد التعليمية)
4. My sister .... (like) this ice cream. She hates it.
(محافظة سوهاج - إدارة المنشأة التعليمية)

6 **Punctuate the following:**

– what do you want to be (محافظة الغربية - إدارة زفتى التعليمية)

....

7 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

"How do you show respect?"

(cleaner – teacher)

....

....

....

....

....

(محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية)

Test 2 on unit (6)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rana and Hoda are ....
   a. cousins b. parents c. sisters d. brothers
2. Each sister had .... beautiful mango trees.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. Hoda cut down her trees and sold their ....
   a. fruit b. vegetables c. leaves d. wood
4. Now, Rana has big trees and more ....
   a. mangoes b. grapes c. apples d. oranges

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teachers need to be very ....
   a. sad b. patient c. slow d. angry
2. Mom looked at the old van's ....
   a. faucet b. socket c. plug d. engine
3. Wave, solar, and .... energies are renewable energy sources.
   a. wind b. coal c. gas d. oil
4. It's a ....'s job to look after all the books in the library.
   a. teacher b. fisherman c. librarian d. guide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shelf – mechanic – bus driver – teacher – trash

We all should respect each other. To show respect to the cleaner, don't throw (1) .... To respect the (2) ...., listen to him carefully. When you get off the bus, say thank you to the (3) .... To respect the librarian, put your books back on the (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. I'm a farmer. I work in the farming industry. I grow oranges. All year, I look after my trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket. My brother Sameh is a guide. He works in the tourism industry. He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed gives his trees water and ....
   a. juice b. history c. nutrients d. fruit
2. His brother Sameh works in the .... industry.
   a. farming b. tourism
   c. fishing d. education

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Ahmed send a lot of the fruit to the factory?

....

4. What does Sameh tell the tourists?

....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You shouldn't .... (obey) your teacher.
2. He always .... (agrees) with his friends. He has different opinions.
3. I can't find my pen. It .... (appeared).
4. I .... (like) this pizza. I don't want to eat it.

6 Punctuate the following:

– a librarian works in a school library

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you want to do"

- What is the job?
- Why do you want to do it?

....

....

....

....

....

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 4 Where do you live?

apartment

tent

house

houseboat

Unit 5 Where do you work?

bus driver

garbage collector

electrician

mechanic

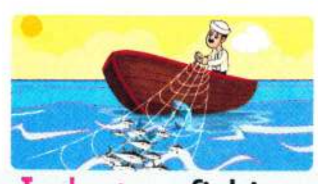
plumber

mail carrier

Unit 6 What do you do?

Industry: education
Job: librarian

Industry: farming
Job: farmer



Industry: fishing
Job: fisherman

Industry: tourism
Job: guide

Language Summary

Unit 4 Where do you live?

Prepositions of place

- We use prepositions of place to say where something is.

above	behind	between	in
in front of	next to	on	under

Ex: – The cat is under the tree.

- Asking and answering about places:

Where is the + place? → **Place + preposition of place + place.**

Ex: – **A:** Where is the school? **B:** The school is next to the office.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Demonstrative pronouns

This — For singular/uncountable near objects
Ex: – This is the faucet the plumber is fixing.

That — For singular/uncountable far objects
Ex: – That's the socket the electrician is fixing.

These — For plural near objects
Ex: – These are the mail carrier's parcels.

Those — For plural far objects
Ex: – Those are the plumber's tools.

Unit 6 What do you do?

The prefix (dis-)

- The prefix "dis-" means "not".

disappointed	dislike	disobey	disappear	disagree

Phonics Summary

Unit 4 Where do you live?

f /f/	v /v/
fan	living room
face	van
fish	vegetables
foot	

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Two-syllable words		Three-syllable words		Four-syllable word	
Words	Syllables	Words	Syllables	Word	Syllables
teacher	teach-er	architect	ar-chi-tect	electrician	e-lec-tri-cian
plumber	plumb-er	mechanic	me-chan-ic		
dentist	den-tist	collector	col-lec-tor		
doctor	doc-tor				

Unit 6 What do you do?

a /æ/	e /e/	i /ɪ/	u /ʌ/
van	ten	fish	sun
sad	fresh	simple	fun
dad	get	fix	
can	engine	village	
man	help	his	
stand	sell	river	
	men		
	leg		

Review 2

Worksheet (1)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the odd vowel sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المتحرك المختلف:

Play Audio

1. face – foot – van – fish
2. vet – fan – violin – vegetables
3. fish – face – van – foot

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A plumber connects the .... so that we have water.
   a. pipes b. cars c. lights d. parcels
2. In the desert, some people live in a/an ...., which is made of cloth.
   a. houseboat b. apartment c. house d. tent
3. I respect the .... I put my books back on the shelf.
   a. guide b. bus driver c. librarian d. cleaner
4. Take out the trash for the ....
   a. mechanic b. garbage collector
   c. plumber d. doctor

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

bodies – flash – plugs – burn – wet

Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a (1) .... of lightning. An electric shock can (2) .... us. If we get one, we can't control our (3) .... We should never put anything into a socket, only use (4) ....

(C) Language

Activity 4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)	(B)
1. Where's the hospital?	☐ a. the electrician is fixing.
2. This is the socket ...	☐ b. It's behind the school.
3. She doesn't like ice cream.	☐ c. to the club.
4. My house is next ...	☐ d. She dislikes it.
	☐ e. She likes it.

Activity 5 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. Where <u>are</u> the supermarket? (............)
2. <u>These</u> is my aunt. Her name is Amira. (............)
3. She <u>appeared</u>, so I can't see her anywhere. (............)
4. The park is <u>under</u> the school and the hospital. (............)

Activity 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. my – These – best – are – friends.
   ....
2. school – is – in front – The – of – the office.
   ....
3. sorry – I'm – mom. – disobeyed – I – my – because
   ....

Activity 7 Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. My house is next to a big tree. (Where ...?)
   ....
2. The little boy doesn't like eggplants. (dislikes)
   ....
3. This is the electrician who fixed the lamps. (These)
   ....

Review 2

Worksheet (2)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the odd vowel sound out:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات الصوت المتحرك المختلف:

1. fun – ten – sun – run
2. can – fix – his – fish
3. help – get – fun – fresh

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Go straight ahead. .... right at the supermarket.
   a. Turn b. Take c. Do d. Jump
2. A .... explains the history to the tourists who come to his country.
   a. librarian b. guide c. teacher d. farmer
3. The .... wake up very early to deliver parcels.
   a. mechanics b. bus drivers c. fishermen d. mail carriers
4. Talia always carried a .... measure and a pencil.
   a. block b. screwdriver c. tape d. socket

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

big – people – safaris – east – bazaars

Hurghada is a beautiful city. It's in the (1) .... of Egypt on the Red Sea. About 190,000 (2) .... live there. There are lots of interesting things to do in Hurghada. There's the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on (3) .... It has some interesting (4) ....

(C) Language

Activity 4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)	(B)
1. These are ...	a. the museum and the post office.
2. The hospital is between ...	b. I disagree with her.
3. The mechanic uses this ...	c. the tents.
4. My sister thinks this is a bad idea.	d. turn left.
	e. tool.

Activity 5 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. <u>When</u> is your house? It's on the corner. (........................)
2. Sara is sorry. She <u>obeyed</u> her mom. (........................)
3. The living room is <u>behind</u> to the bathroom. (........................)
4. These are the <u>mechanic</u> who work in the repair shop. (........................)

Activity 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. are – electrician's – <u>Those</u> – the – tools.
   ....
2. tall – <u>There</u> – trees – the house. – behind – are
   ....
3. from – sheep – farm. – <u>The</u> – disappeared – the
   ....

Activity 7 Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. My bag is behind the couch. (in front of)
   ....
2. That's the bus that takes us to the school. (These)
   ....
3. I think it's a nice car, but my friend doesn't agree. (disagrees)
   ....

Review 2

Worksheet (3)

(A) Phonics

Activity 1 Listen and circle the word with the different number of syllables out: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات عدد المقاطع الصوتية المختلفة:

1. electrician – mechanic – collector – architect
2. dentist – plumber – mechanic – teacher
3. dentist – collector – teacher – doctor

(B) Vocabulary

Activity 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Wave, ..., and wind energies are renewable energy sources.
   a. oil b. solar c. gas d. coal
2. We buy clothes and shoes from the ....
   a. school b. hospital c. shopping mall d. supermarket
3. If we get an electric ...., we can't control our bodies.
   a. shock b. burn c. plug d. thing
4. .... need to encourage their students.
   a. Librarians b. Cleaners c. Teachers d. Fishermen

Activity 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

seed – money – smaller – tree – bigger

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango (1) .... next to her house. Malak decided to cut down her tree and sell its wood to get (2) .... Sara's mango tree grew (3) .... Malak had no more mangoes, so Sara gave her a (4) .... to plant.

(C) Language

Activity 4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصِل (A) مع (B):

(A)		(B)
1. The cat sits ...	☐	a. pen I use to write.
2. Mazen didn't listen to his teacher.	☐	b. pens I use to write.
3. Where is ...	☐	c. on the table.
4. That is the ...	☐	d. the supermarket?
	☐	e. He disobeyed him.

Activity 5 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. The boy is <u>on</u> front of the tree. (...............)
2. I like bananas, but I <u>like</u> mangoes. (...............)
3. That <u>are</u> the water dripping from the faucet. (...............)
4. Those <u>seed</u> need water to grow. (...............)

Activity 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملًا:

1. rabbit – <u>The</u> – disappeared – the hat. – from
....
2. is – the – <u>This</u> – faucet – is fixing. – the plumber
....
3. computer. – is – <u>The cell phone</u> – to – the – next
....

Activity 7 Read and rewrite the sentences using the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الجُمل مستخدمًا الكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

1. Can you see? The dog is under the box. (above)
....
2. I'm sad because I didn't pass my test. (disappointed)
....
3. Those are the mail carriers who have our parcels. (mail carrier)
....

Listening Scripts

Conversation/Reading Practice

Unit 1 – Lesson (1) Page 23

Mom made a special lunch for us yesterday, and it was delicious. She made rice and chicken. In Egypt, we grow rice and also raise chickens. Egyptian farmers produce many fruits and vegetables like tomatoes, onions, mangoes, and watermelons.

Unit 2 – Lesson (1) Page 63

We think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are important. Spiders, crocodiles, and snakes do an important job. Spiders eat insects and the farmers like them. Snakes and crocodiles eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

Unit 3 – Lesson (1) Page 104

We grow tomatoes on the balcony. To grow new tomatoes, we plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

Unit 4 – Lesson (1) Page 159

Talia and her mom moved to a new apartment. Talia's favorite room is her bedroom. Talia can do her homework quietly in her bedroom. Talia's mom likes the living room. She can see the whole street from the balcony.

Unit 5 – Lesson (1) Page 197

Dad is a plumber. Sometimes it's messy because he has to fix pipes and faucets. When he was young, he wanted to be a bus driver. But he doesn't really like driving! He was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

Unit 6 – Lesson (1) Page 243

A guide works in the tourism industry. People from all over the world come to his country. A guide's job is to explain the history. He also tells the tourists lots of information about the places they visit in his country.

Unit Tests

Test 1 on unit 1

Cheng lived long ago in China. He was a good gardener. One day, the emperor said there would be a competition. He would give a seed to each gardener. The one who could grow the most beautiful plant from the seed would be the next emperor.

Test 2 on unit 1

Maged asked his mom what Egyptian farmers do. His mom said that farmers produce fruits and many vegetables like tomatoes, onions, grapes, and potatoes. She also said that Egyptian farmers raise chickens. Egyptian food is healthy. We all like Egyptian food.

Test 1 on unit 2

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has very big ears. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects. It eats insects, lizards, and small mice. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

Test 2 on unit 2

Horses and camels are amazing animals. Camels are strong animals. They help to carry things and people to cross the desert. Horses have large, beautiful eyes. Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. Camels are slower than horses, but horses are shorter.

Test 1 on unit 3

We have tomato plants on our balcony. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We water the tomato plants every day. Plants need water to grow. Tomatoes are healthy vegetables.

Test 2 on unit 3

Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water like tamarisk and acacia. Unlike reed and lotus flower that live near rivers, they need a lot of water. Other plants live in the agricultural habitat like the bean plant.

Test 1 on unit 4

Mariam lives in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. In Hurghada, there is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We can also see beautiful houses and buy things at the bazaars.

Test 2 on unit 4

We have a new shopping mall in our town. Here are some directions to it. From the corner of South Street, go straight ahead. Take the first right on North Street. It's next to the hospital where my parents work.

Test 1 on unit 5

I'm a mail carrier. There are some pros and cons about this job. I'm outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when it's cold or very hot. I also walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

Test 2 on unit 5

All jobs are important. A plumber connects the pipes so that we have water. He also fixes faucets. An electrician connects electricity to homes so that we can use lights. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage. A bus driver brings children to school.

Test 1 on unit 6

My name is Ali. When I am older, I want to be like my father. He is a fisherman. He wakes up early every day. He works on a boat and catches fish. In the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish in the market.

Test 2 on unit 6

Rana and Hoda are sisters. Each sister had two beautiful mango trees in their garden. Hoda cut down her trees and sold their wood to get money. Now, Rana has big trees and more mangoes, but Hoda has no more wood or mangoes.